

# **Ritchie's Fabulae Faciles**

Latin Text with Facing Vocabulary and Commentary

Tablet Edition 2013

Geoffrey Steadman

Beta Tablet Edition

This is an incomplete beta tablet edition of the paperback reformatted for use on electronic devices. If you would like to recommend changes, please contact me at [geoffreysteadman@gmail.com](mailto:geoffreysteadman@gmail.com).

Ritchie's Fabulae Faciles  
Latin Text with Facing Vocabulary and Commentary

First Edition

© 2012 by Geoffrey D. Steadman

All rights reserved. Subject to the exception immediately following, this book may not be reproduced, in whole or in part, in any form (beyond that copying permitted by Sections 107 and 108 of the U.S. Copyright Law and except by reviewers for the public press), without written permission from the publisher.

The author has made an online version of this work available (via email) under a Creative Commons Attribution-Noncommercial-Share Alike 3.0 License. The terms of the license can be accessed at [creativecommons.org](http://creativecommons.org).

Accordingly, you are free to copy, alter, and distribute this work freely under the following conditions:

- (1) You must attribute the work to the author (but not in any way that suggests that the author endorses your alterations to the work).
- (2) You may not use this work for commercial purposes.
- (3) If you alter, transform, or build upon this work, you may distribute the resulting work only under the same or similar license as this one.

ISBN-13: 978-0-9843065-5-8

ISBN-10: 0-9843065-5-2

Published by Geoffrey Steadman  
Cover Design: David Steadman

Fonts: Times New Roman

[geoffreysteadman@gmail.com](mailto:geoffreysteadman@gmail.com)

## Table of Contents

	Pages
Introduction to Ritchie's <i>Fabulae Faciles</i> .....	v-vi
How to Use This Commentary.....	vii
Running Core Vocabulary List.....	viii-x
Abbreviations.....	xii
Nouns, Pronouns, and Adjectives.....	116-117
Verb Synopses.....	118-124
Alphabetized Core Vocabulary List.....	125-128

### Ritchie's *Fabulae Faciles* Tablet Edition

Perseus (sections 1-11).....	1-11
Heracles (sections 12-56).....	12-56
Jason and the Argonauts (sections 57-80).....	57-80
Ulysses (sections 81-100).....	81-100



## Introduction to *Ritchie's Fabulae Faciles*

This book should be on the bedstand of every intermediate Latin student. The volume is a graded reader of Latin stories, which the modern author Francis Ritchie composed in order to give students additional practice before reading Caesar's *Gallic War*. The book includes the myths of Perseus, Heracles, Jason and the Argonauts, and Ulysses; and the entire text is divided into 100 sections of Latin which are roughly a paragraph in length. Although Ritchie assumes that readers know all five declensions, pronouns, and active and passive verbs from the first story about Perseus, he does not introduce the subjunctive mood until the middle of the the account of Heracles or indirect discourse and ablative absolutes until Jason and the Argonauts. Ritchie's purpose is to provide readers with an opportunity to master simple Latin grammar and morphology before they encounter more complex constructions in the later stories, and he does so while presenting students with an informative and thoroughly engaging storyline.

This Latin text was first published by Ritchie in 1884 in a volume called *Fabulae Faciles: A First Latin Reader*. In 1903, John Kirtland published a revised edition entitled *Ritchie's Fabulae Faciles: A First Latin Reader*. Kirtland modified Ritchie's Latin text, added grammatical notes, and eliminated a section of drill exercises found in the beginning the original volume. Kirtland's book remained the standard edition until 1991, when another revised volume was prepared by Gilbert Lawall, Stanley Iverson, and Allan Wooley, entitled *Fabulae Graecae: A Revised Edition of Ritchie's Fabulae Faciles*. While the first two books are no longer protected by copyright law and can be downloaded for free, the *Fabulae Graecae* remains available in paperback.

The aim of this current edition is to make Ritchie's myths even more accessible to intermediate-level Latin readers. To accomplish this goal, I have decided to adopt the best features of Clyde Pharr's *Aeneid*. Facing each page of the Latin text is a single page of commentary divided into halves. The top half includes all of the corresponding vocabulary that occur fourteen or fewer times in the work, arranged alphabetically in two columns. The bottom half is devoted to grammatical notes, which are organized according to line numbers and arranged in two columns. The advantage of this format is that it allows me to include as much information as

possible on a single page and at the same time ensure that the commentary entries are distinct and immediately accessible to readers.

To complement the vocabulary within the commentary, I have added a running core word list at the beginning of this book that includes all words occurring fifteen or more times. An alphabetized form of this same list can be found in the glossary. Together, this book has been designed in such a way that, once readers have mastered the running core list, they will be able to rely solely on the Latin text and facing notes and not need to turn a page or consult outside dictionaries.

The greatest strength of this book, apart from captivating stories, is its ability to expose readers to difficult constructions over and over again. As a rule, I prefer to offer too much assistance in the grammatical notes rather than too little and, since readers may begin anywhere in the book, I identify constructions consistently throughout the commentary—often multiple times on the same page. In the case of *Fabulae Faciles* such support is appropriate. Even if readers rely on overly generous notes the first time they encounter a difficult passage, Ritchie presents the same constructions and same phrases so often that readers quickly become familiar with a range of difficult clauses and therefore rely less and less on the notes as they progress. By the time they encounter Ulysses, the constructions which readers have already encountered are so dense and frequent that it is impossible to include the ample notes found in earlier myths, and in most cases such notes are no longer necessary.

Although this volume may be used as a supplement in the classroom, I hope that teachers will encourage students to keep a copy by their bedsides for casual reading and rereading during the summer months and winter breaks. While there is no substitute for meaningful classical and medieval Latin texts, most authentic Latin prose still remains beyond the reach for intermediate-level students. This current commentary is made in the hopes that the short sections of connected prose will help readers of varying abilities develop reading proficiency and provide them with the knowledge and confidence necessary to read authentic Latin authors.

Geoffrey Steadman, Ph.D.  
geoffreysteadman@gmail.com  
geoffreysteadman.com

## How to Use this Commentary

Research shows that, as we learn how to read in a second language, a combination of reading and direct vocabulary instruction is statistically superior to reading alone. One of the purposes of this book is to encourage active acquisition of vocabulary.

### 1. Master the core vocabulary list as soon as possible.

**Develop a daily regimen for memorizing vocabulary and forms before you begin reading.** Start with an intensive review of the running core list on the next page. Although a substantial number of core vocabulary words come within the first few lessons of the commentary, readers have encountered most of these words in first-year Latin and should be able to master the list quickly. Once readers have reviewed these words, I recommend that they consult and memorize slightly less frequent words in *Fabulae Faciles* as they encounter them.

### 2. Read actively.

**Read in Latin word order.** Initially, readers have a tendency both (a) to scan through the entire Latin sentence quickly to order to attain a sense of the constructions and (b) to treat the sentence as a puzzle and jump around the passage from subject to verb to object and so on. As you acquire more vocabulary and your comfort with the Latin increases, make reading in Latin word order your primary method. It is a lot of fun and with persistence very satisfying as well.

**Develop the habit of making educated guesses as you read.** The purpose of the graded reader to provide you with an opportunity to encounter difficult constructions, particularly subjunctive clauses and indirect discourse, so frequently that you cannot help but to develop proficiency identifying and translating them. Make educated guesses as you read. If you guess correctly, the commentary will reaffirm your knowledge of the Latin. If you answer incorrectly, you will become more aware of your weaknesses and therefore more capable of correcting them.

### 3. Reread a passage immediately after you have completed it.

Repeated readings not only help you commit Latin to memory but also increase your ability to read the Latin as Latin. Always read the words out loud (or at least whisper them to yourself). While you may be inclined to translate the text into English as you reread, develop the habit of reading Latin as Latin.

### 4. Reread the most recent passage immediately before you begin a new one.

This additional repetition will strengthen your ability to recognize vocabulary, forms, and syntax quickly, bolster your confidence, and most importantly provide you with much-needed context as you begin the next selection in the text.

## Running Core Vocabulary (Words 15 or More Times)

The following six pages include all words that occur fifteen or more times in the myths in a running core vocabulary list. These words are not found within the vocabulary lists facing each page of Latin. The number in the right column is the page number where the core vocabulary word first occurs. Flashcards for this list are available online. For a single alphabetized list of these core words, consult the glossary.

### Page

- |          |  |
|----------|--|
| <b>2</b> | <b>ā, ab, abs:</b> (away) from, out of, 72                           |
| <b>2</b> | <b>acciō:</b> to receive, get, accept, 26                            |
| <b>2</b> | <b>ad:</b> to, toward; near, 188                                     |
| <b>2</b> | <b>annus, -ī m.:</b> year, 18  |
| <b>2</b> | <b>at:</b> but; mind you; but, you say, 27                           |
| <b>2</b> | <b>atque:</b> and, and also, and even, 21                            |
| <b>2</b> | <b>autem:</b> however, moreover, 81                                  |
| <b>2</b> | <b>brevis, -e:</b> short, brief, 15                                  |
| <b>2</b> | <b>coniciō, -ere, -iēcī:</b> throw together, throw, take oneself, 13 |
| <b>2</b> | <b>cōnsilium, -ī n.:</b> plan, advice; council, assembly, 23         |
| <b>2</b> | <b>constituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus:</b> decide, establish, resolve, 36   |
| <b>2</b> | <b>cum:</b> with (+ abl.); when, since, although, 196                |
| <b>2</b> | <b>dē:</b> down from, from, about, concerning (+ abl.), 29           |
| <b>2</b> | <b>deus, -ī m.:</b> god, divinity, deity, 19                         |
| <b>2</b> | <b>dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus:</b> say, speak, tell, call, name, 17    |
| <b>2</b> | <b>dō, dare, dēdī, datum:</b> give, put, make; grant, allow, 42      |
| <b>2</b> | <b>enim:</b> for, indeed, in truth, 77                               |
| <b>2</b> | <b>et:</b> and, also, even, 287                                      |
| <b>2</b> | <b>faciō, -ere, fēcī, fectum:</b> make, do, 89                       |
| <b>2</b> | <b>habitō (1):</b> to inhabit, live, 18                              |
| <b>2</b> | <b>hic, haec, hoc:</b> this, that; he, she, it, 222                  |
| <b>2</b> | <b>ibi:</b> there, in that place, 21                                 |
| <b>2</b> | <b>igitur:</b> therefore, then, accordingly, 71                      |
| <b>2</b> | <b>ille, illa, illud:</b> that (famous); he, she, it, 84             |
| <b>2</b> | <b>in:</b> in (+ abl.) , into (+ acc.), 272                          |
| <b>2</b> | <b>insula, -ae f.:</b> island, 20                                    |
| <b>2</b> | <b>ipse, ipsa, ipsum:</b> -self; the very, 50                        |
| <b>2</b> | <b>is, ea, id:</b> this, that; he, she, it, 230                      |
| <b>2</b> | <b>lītus, lītoris n.:</b> shore, beach, 19                           |
| <b>2</b> | <b>māgnopere:</b> greatly, very much, 15                             |
| <b>2</b> | <b>magnus, -a, -um:</b> great, large, tall; mighty, important, 79    |
| <b>2</b> | <b>mare, maris n.:</b> sea, 15                                       |
| <b>2</b> | <b>multus, -a, -um:</b> much, many, abundant, 36                     |
| <b>2</b> | <b>omnis, omne:</b> every, all, 96                                   |
| <b>2</b> | <b>Perseus, -ī m.:</b> Perseus, 26                                   |
| <b>2</b> | <b>post:</b> after, behind (+ acc.); afterward, next, 32             |
| <b>2</b> | <b>postquam:</b> after, when, 58                                     |

- 2 **puer, puerī, m.**: boy, 17  
 2 **quīdam, quaedam, quiddam**: certain, a certain, 50  
 2 **rēx, rēgis m.**: king; *adj.* ruling, royal, 44  
 2 **sē**: himself, herself, itself, themselves, 115  
 2 **sum, esse, fuī, futūrum**: to be, 422  
 2 **suus, -a, -um**: his, her, its, their (own), 84  
 2 **tamen**: nevertheless, however, 99  
 2 **tantus, -a, -um**: so great, so much, so large, 55  
 2 **tempestās, -tatis f.**: weather; storm, 17  
 2 **tempus, -poris n.**: time, 31  
 2 **tum**: then, at that time, 73  
 2 **videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum**: to see, 50  
 2 **volō, velle, voluī**: will, wish, be willing, 22
- 4 **audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītūm**: to hear, listen to, 22  
 4 **capiō, capere, cēpī, captūm**: to take, capture, seize, 14  
 4 **caput, capitīs, n.**: head; life, 20  
 4 **causa, -ae f.**: reason, cause; case, 31  
 4 **dum**: while, as long as, until, 35  
 4 **ē, ex**: out from, from, out of (+ abl.), 108  
 4 **etiam**: besides, also, even, 17  
 4 **homō, -inis m./f.**: man, mortal, human, 21  
 4 **iam**: now, already, soon, 29  
 4 **locus, -ī m.**: place, region, situation; opportunity, 51  
 4 **manus, -ūs f.**: hand, 16  
 4 **modus, -ī m.**: way, manner; **modo** (adv.) only 38  
 4 **monstrum, -ī n.**: monster, 26  
 4 **per**: through, over, across, 23  
 4 **perveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventūm**: to come through, arrive 19  
 4 **prīmus -a -um**: first, 16  
 4 **quaerō, -cre, quaeſīvī, quaeſītūm**: to seek, ask, inquire, 21  
 4 **quī, quae, quod (quis? quid?)**: who, which, that, 307  
 4 **referō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātūm**: report, bring back, 18  
 4 **rēs, reī, f.**: thing, matter, affair, business, 83  
 4 **saxum, saxī n.**: rock, 15  
 4 **species, -ēi f.**: sight, look, appearance, aspect, 15  
 4 **statim**: immediately, on the spot, at once, 28  
 4 **tandem**: finally, at last, at length, in the end, 28  
 4 **ubi**: where, when, 56  
 4 **ūnus, -a, -um**: one, 14  
 4 **veniō, -ire, vēnī, ventūs**: come, go, 72
- 6 **animus, -ī m.**: soul, spirit, breath, courage, pride, 18  
 6 **diēs, -ēī m./f.**: day, time, season, 46  
 6 **dolor, -ōris m.**: pain, grief, anger, passion, 17  
 6 **exspectō (1)**: look out for, wait for, await, 15  
 6 **filia, -iae f.**: daughter, 20

- 6 gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus:** carry (on), wage, 18  
**6 gravis, -e:** heavy, serious, severe; venerable, 16  
**6 iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum:** to order, command, 17  
**6 mittō, -ere, -misi, missum:** to send, let go, 18  
**6 parō (1):** prepare, make (ready), 21  
**6 periculum, -ī n.:** risk, danger, peril, 31  
**6 subitō:** immediately, straightaway, 19  
**6 timor, -oris m.:** fear, dread, anxiety, 15  
**6 trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditum:** to give over, hand down, 20
- 8 conferō, -ferre:** bring together, collect, carry, 18  
**8 corpus, corporis, n.:** body, 19  
**8 mox:** soon, 19  
**8 nāvis, nāvis, f.:** ship, boat, 63  
**8 neque:** and not (neque...neque = neither...nor), 27  
**8 paucī, -ae, -a:** little, few, scanty, 22  
**8 regiō, -ōnis f.:** region, district, 18  
**8 regnum, -ī n.:** (royal) power, kingdom, realm, 19  
**8 salūs, -ūtis f.:** safety, security, health, 15  
**8 sed:** but, moreover, however, 31  
**8 sentiō, sentire, sēnsī, sēnsum:** to feel, perceive, 16  
**8 sine:** without (*abl.*), 19  
**8 solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtum:** to loosen, release, 20
- 10 cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum:** to learn, *perf.* know, 22  
**10 dīmittō, -ere, -misi, -missus:** send away, let go, 8  
**10 Hercules, -is m.:** Hercules 121  
**10 pars, partis, f.:** part, share, 23  
**10 redeō, -ire, -īvī:** go back, return, come back, 19  
**10 urbs, urbīs, f.:** city, 19
- 12 habeō, -ēre, habuī, -itus:** have, hold; consider, 34  
**12 interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum:** kill, slay, destroy, 15  
**12 iter, itineris n.:** way, road, journey, 19  
**12 nōn:** not, by no means, not at all, 40  
**12 paulus, -a, -um:** little, small, 16  
**12 vīs, (vīs), f.:** force, power, violence; *pl.* vīrēs, strength, 23  
**12 vir, virī m.:** man, male, 23
- 14 bōs, bovis m. f.:** cow, ox, bull (bobus-dat. abl.), 18  
**14 proficīscor, -ī, -fectus:** set out, depart, 19
- 16 Eurystheus, -ī m.:** Eurystheus, 23  
**16 possum, posse, potuī:** be able, can, avail, 46
- 18 conficiō, -ere:** to exhaust, finish, accomplish, 16  
**18 labor, -ōris m.:** labor, hardship, task, 22  
**18 nūllus, -a, -um:** none, no, no one, 24
- 20 auxiliū, -ī n.:** help, aid, assistance, 19

- 20 coepī, coepisse, coeptum:** begin, 16  
**20 ingēns (ingentis):** huge, immense, vast, huge, 21  
**20 ita:** so, thus, 25
- 22 progređor, -gredī, progressus sum:** advance, 17  
**22 reliquus, -a, um:** remaining, left (over), 15  
**22 sī:** if (only), whether, in case that, 20  
**22 spelunca, -ae f.:** cave, 30  
**22 summus, -a, -um:** highest, greatest, top of, 29  
**22 vinum, vinī n.:** wine, 16
- 24 idem, eadem, idem:** the same, 15  
**24 ēgredior, -i, -gressus:** go out, disembark, 18
- 26 flūmen, -inis n.:** river, stream, 15  
**26 ut:** as, just as, when (+ ind.); (so) that, in order that, 112
- 28 terra, -ae f.:** land, earth, 22
- 34 socius, -i m.:** ally, companion, comrade, 33
- 36 intellegō, -ere, -lēxi, -lēctum:** to realize, understand, 24
- 40 nē:** lest, that not, no, not, 22
- 58 Iāson, -onis m.:** Jason, 45
- 62 Argonautae, -ārum m.:** Argonauts, 18
- 70 Mēdēa, -ae f.:** Medea, 27
- 88 Ulixēs, -is m.:** Ulysses, 43
- 92 Polypħēmus, -i m.:** Polyphemus, 19
- 104 Circē, -ēs f.:** Circe, 15

## Abbreviations

abs.	absolute	impf.	imperfect	pl.	plural
acc.	accusative	imper.	impersonal	plpf.	pluperfect
act.	active	indic.	indicative	pred.	predicate
adj.	adjective	i.o.	indirect object	prep.	preposition
adv.	adverb	ind.	indirect	pres.	present
app.	appositive	inf.	infinitive	pron.	pronoun
comp.	comparative	inter.	interrogative	quest.	question
dat.	dative	m.	masculine	reflex.	reflexive
dep.	deponent	n.	neuter	rel.	relative
d.o.	direct object	nom.	nominative	seq.	sequence
f.	feminine	obj.	object	sg.	singular
fut.	future	pple.	participle	subj.	subject
gen.	genitive	pass	passive	superl.	superlative
imp.	imperative	pf.	perfect	voc.	vocative

“To make the ancients speak, we must feed them with our own blood.”

-von Wilamowitz-Moellendorff

## 1. THE ARK

Haec nārrantur ā poētīs dē Perseō. Perseus fīlius erat Iōvis, maximī 1  
deōrum; avus eius Acrisiūs appellābātur. Acrisiūs volēbat Perseum  
nepōtem suum necāre; nam propter ḍrāculum puerum timēbat.  
Comprehendit igitur Perseum adhuc īfantem, et cum matre in arcā  
ligneā inclūsit. Tum arcām ipsam in mare coniēcit. Danaē, Perseī 5  
mater, magnopere territa est; tempestās enim magna mare turbābat.  
Perseus autem in sinū mātris dormiēbat.

Acrisiūs, -īī m.: Acrisiūs, 4

adhuc: still, 5

appellō (1): call (by name), name, 12

arca, -ae f.; chest, box, ark, 4

avus, avī m.: grandfather, 2

comprehendō, -ere, -dī, -sum: grasp, seize, 3

Danaē, -ēs f.: Danae, 5

dormiō, -ire, -īvī: to sleep, 8

fīlius, -īī m.: son, 10

includō, -ere, -ūsī, -ūsum: close in, shut in, 7

infāns, -fantis m. f.: infant, 2

Iuppiter, Iovīs m.: Jupiter, 8

lignum, -ī n.: wood, 4

mater, matris f.: mother, 9

maximus, -a, -um: greatest, 9

nam: for, 6

narrō (1): to narrate, relate, 7

necō (1): to kill, slay, put to death, 9

nepōs, nepōtis m.: grandson, decendent, 2

ōrāculum, -ī n.: oracle, 11

poēta, -ae m.: poet, 4

propter: on account of, because of, 6

sinus, -ūs m.: bosom, lap, 1

terreō, -ēre, -ūī, territum: to terrify, scare, 5

timeō, -ēre, -ūī: fear, dread, 6

turbō (1): to confuse, disturb, 2

1 haec: *these (things)*; neut. pl.

dē: *about*; often when object is not a place  
Iōvis: *of Jupiter*; the god Iuppiter declines  
in the 3<sup>rd</sup> decl.: Iuppiter, Iovīs, Iōvī, Iōvem  
and Iōve; Iōvis is gen. sg.

2 eius: gen. sg. of is, ea, id

Acrisiūs: pred. nom. of appellābātur,  
which behaves as a linking verb

suum: *his*; reflexive possessive adj., use the  
subject ('su' as in subject!) to translate

5 in mare: acc. place to which, neuter sg.

Danaē: Greek nominative, the two dots  
(German umlaut) indicate that the 'e' is  
pronounced separately from the 'a'

6 tempestās: nom. sg., fem. 3<sup>rd</sup> decl.

7 sinū: 4<sup>th</sup> decl. abl. sg.

## 2. JUPITER SAVES HIS SON

Iuppiter tamen haec omnia vīdit, et fīlium suum servāre cōnstituit. 1  
Tranquillum igitur fēcit mare, et arcā ad īnsulam Seriphum  
perdūxit. Huius īnsulae Polydectēs tum rex erat. Postquam arca ad  
lītus appulsa est, Danaē in harēnā quietem capiēbat. Post breve  
tempus ā piscātore quōdam reperta est, et ad domum rēgis 5  
Polydectis adducta est. Ille mātrem et puerum benignē excēpit, et  
eīs sedem tūtam in fīnibus suīs dedit. Danaē hoc dōnum libenter  
accēpit, et prō tantō beneficiō rēgī gratiās ēgit.

**addūcō, -ere, -xī, -ctum:** to lead to, bring, 8  
**appellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsī:** drive to, 14  
**arca, -ae f.:** chest, box, ark, 4  
**beneficiūm, -i n.:** benefit, favor; kindness, 8  
**benignus, -a, -um:** kind, 4  
**Danaē, -ēs f.:** Danae, 5  
**domus, -ūs f.:** house, home, dwelling, 11  
**dōnum, -ī n.:** gift, 6  
**excipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptum:** receive, welcome 9  
**finis, -is m./f.:** end, limit, border, boundary, 12  
**grātia, -ae f.:** graditude, favor, thanks, 10  
**harēna, -ae f.:** sand, 1  
**Iuppiter, Iovis m.:** Jupiter, 8

**libenter:** gladly, willingly, 12  
**mater, matris f.:** mother, 9  
**perdūcō, -ere, -xī, -ctum:** lead through, 4  
**piscātor, piscātōris m.:** fisherman, 1  
**Polydectēs, -is m.:** Polydectes, 7  
**prō:** before, in front of, for, 9  
**quiēs, quiētis f.:** rest, repose, sleep, 5  
**reperiō, -ire, repperī, repertum:** find out, 9  
**sēdes, sēdis f.:** seat; abode, home, 5  
**Seriphus, -ī m.:** Seriphos (an island) 1  
**servō (1):** save, keep, preserve, 1  
**tranquillus, -a, -um:** calm, tranquil, 1  
**tutus, -a, -um:** safe, secure, 3

1 **haec omnia:** neuter acc. pl., add ‘things’

2 **fēcit:** made (x) (y); tranquillum is an adj.  
in the predicative position: not ‘tranquil  
sea’ but ‘sea tranquil’

3 **huius īnsulae:** gen. sg. with rex; -ius  
is a common gen. pronoun ending (hic)

4 **quiētam capiēbat:** was taking a rest  
5 **quō-dam:** a certain; the suffix -dam never

declines but the first half of this indefinite  
adjective does and modifies piscātōre (abl)

6 **benignē:** kindly; -ē indicates an adv.

7 **eīs:** dat. pl. is, ea, id; ind. obj. of dedit

8 **prō:** (*in return*) for

**rēgī:** dat. sg. 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. noun rex, rēgis

**gratiās ēgit:** gave thanks; common  
idiom for gratiās āgo, here pf.

### 3. PERSEUS IS SENT ON HIS TRAVELS

Perseus igitur multōs annōs ibi habitābat, et cum mātre suā vītam 1  
beātam agēbat. At Polydectēs Danaēn magnopere amābat, atque  
eam in mātrimōnium ducere volēbat. Hoc tamen cōsilium Perseō  
minimē grātum erat. Polydectes igitur Perseum dimittere cōnstituit.  
Tum iuvenem ad sē vocāvit et haec dīxit: "Turpe est hanc ignāvam 5  
vītam agere; iam dūdum tū adulēscēns es. Quō ūsque hīc manēbis?  
Tempus est arma capere et virtūtem praestāre. Hinc abī, et caput  
Medūsae mihi refer."

- abeō, -īre, -īi, -ītus: go away, go off, depart, 6  
adulēscēns, -ēntis: young (man), youth(ful), 3  
agō, agere, ēgī, āctum: drive, lead, spend, 13  
amō (1): love, like, 1  
arma, -ōrum n.: arms, equipment, tools, 6  
beatus, -a, -um: blessed, happy, 3  
Danaē, -ēs f.: Danae, 5  
dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, --: send away, let go, 8  
ducō, -ere, dūxī, dūctus: lead, draw, bring, 5  
dūdum: a short time ago; just now, once, 2  
grātus, -a, -um: pleasing, grateful, 1  
hinc: from this place, hence, 1  
ignavus, -a, -um: lazy, cowardly, 2

- 1 **multōs annōs:** for...; acc. duration  
2 **agēbat:** was living/spending; common  
idiom for vītam agō; cf. line 18  
**Danaēn:** Greek accusative (‘n’ not ‘m’)  
3 **Perseō:** dat. of reference with grātum  
5 **haec:** neuter pl., supply ‘things’  
**Turpe est:** it is shameful to; the adj. turpis,  
turpe is neut. because an inf. is subject  
6 **agere:** to live; idiom, see p. 2, line 22  
**iam dūdum:** now for a long time; often  
as one word  
**es:** 2<sup>nd</sup> sg. pres. sum

- iuvenis, -is m.: youth, young man, 4  
maneō, -ēre, mansī, --: to stay, wait, 9  
mater, matris f.: mother, 9  
mātrimōnium, -ī n.: marriage, 6  
Medūsa, -ae f.: Medusa, 6  
minimē: least, by no means, not at all, 1  
Polydectēs, -is m.: Polydectes, 7  
praestō, -stāre, -stīf: stand in front, show, 6  
turpis, turpe: ugly, shameful, 1  
usque: all the way to, up to, continuously, 2  
virtūs, -ūtis f.: valor, manhood, excellence, 10  
vīta, -ae, f.: life, 9  
vocō (1): call, summon, invoke, 2

- quō (cōsiliō):** for what purpose  
**hīc:** note the long vowel ‘ī’ indicates that  
this is the adverb ‘here’ not the pronoun  
7 **Tempus est:** it is time; infinitives are subj.  
**hinc:** from here; compare hīc above  
**abī:** sg. imperative abeō  
8 **mihi:** dat. sg. egō  
**refer:** sg. imperative, 3<sup>rd</sup> conj. referō  
does not retain the final “e.” Consider  
the mnemonic: ‘dīc, dūc, fac and fer  
should have an “e” but it isn’t there.’

## 4. PERSEUS GETS HIS OUTFIT

Perseus ubi haec audīvit, ex īnsulā discessit, et postquam ad 1 continentem vēnit, Medūsam quaeſīvit. Diū fruſtrā quaerēbat; namque natūram locī ignorābat. Tandem Apollō et Minerva viam dēmōnstrāvērunt. Prīmum ad Graeās, sorōrēs Medūsae, pervēnit. Ab hīs tālāria et galeam magicam accēpit. Apollo autem et 5 Minerva falcem et ſpeculum dedērunt. Tum postquam tālāria pedibus induit, in āēra ascendit. Diū per āēra volābat; tandem tamen ad eum locum vēnit ubi Medūsa cum cēterīs Gorgonibus habitābat. Gorgonēs autem mōnstra erant ſpeciē horribilī; capita enim ēārum anguibus omnīnō contēcta erant. Manūs etiam ex aere 10 factae erant.

āēr, aēris n.: air, 7

aes, aeris n.: bronze, 1

anguis, -is m. f.: serpents, snakes, 1

Apollo, -inis m.: Apollo, 7

ascendō, -ere, -i, -ēnſus: ascend, mount, 3

cēterī, -ae, -a: the other, remaining, 2

contegō, -ere, -tēxī, -tēctum: cover, 1

contineō, -ere, -nuī, -tentum: hold or keep together, 4

dēmonstrō (1): to show, demonstrate, 13

discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum: to go away, depart, 4

diū: a long time, long, 13

falx falcis f.: sickle, 2

fruſtrā: in vain, for nothing, 13

galea, -ae f.: helmet, 3

Gorgō, -onis f.: Gorgon, 4

2 fruſtrā: a common adverb

4 Graeās: these 3 sisters to the Gorgons had one eye, which they shared; Perseus stole the eye until they told him what he wanted

7 pedibus: on...; dat. pl. with compound

Graeae, -ārum f.: Graece, 1

horribis, -e: horrible, dreadful, 11

ignōrō (1): not know, be ignorant, 5

induō, -ere, induī, indūtum: put on, 8

magicus, -a, -um: magic, 5

Medūsa, -ae f.: Medusa, 6

Minerva, -ae f.: Minerva, 4

namque: for, 2

natūra, -ae. f.: nature, 9

omnīnō: altogether, wholly, entirely, 11

pēs, pedis m.: foot, 8

soror, sorōris f.: sister, 1

speculum, -i n.: mirror, 3

talāria, -ium: winged shoes, 4

via, -ae, f.: way, road, 4

volō (1): to fly, 3

verb (make prefix “in-“ into a preposition)

9 ſpeciē horribilī: *of horrible appearance*; abl. of quality with monstra, horribilī is i-stem 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. abl., ſpeciē is 5<sup>th</sup> decl. abl.

10 aere: bronze; abl. of aes, not āēr

## 5. THE GORGON'S HEAD

Rēs difficillima erat caput Gorgonis abscīdere; eius enim cōspectū 1  
homines in saxum vertēbantur. Propter hanc causam Minerva  
speculum Perseō dederat. Ille igitur tergum vertit, et in speculum  
inspiciēbat; hōc modō ad locum vēnit ubi Medūsa dormiēbat. Tum  
falce suā caput eius ūnō ictū abscīdit. Ceterae Gorgonēs statim ē 5  
somnō excitatae sunt, et ubi rem vīdērunt, īrā commōtae sunt.  
Arma rapuērunt, et Perseum occīdere volēbant. Ille autem dum  
fūgit, galeam magicam induit; et ubi hoc fēcit, statim ē cōspectū  
eārum ēvāsit.

abscīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum: cut away or off, 5  
arma, -ōrum n.: arms, equipment, tools, 6  
cēterī, -ae, -a: the other, remaining, 2  
commoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum: move,  
trouble, upset, 14  
cōspectus, -ūs m.: sight, view, 6  
difficilis, -e: hard, difficult, troublesome, 6  
dormiō, -re, -ivī: to sleep, 8  
ēvadō, -ere, ēvāsī, ēvāsum: go out, escape, 9  
excitō (1): excite, rouse, incite, 8  
falx falcis f.: sickle, 2  
fugiō, fugere, fūgī, --: to flee, hurry away, 9  
galea, -ae f.: helmet, 3  
Gorgō, -onis f.: Gorgon, 4

1 **difficillima**: superlative difficilis  
eius...cōspectū: gen. sg. the Gorgon's  
4 **hōc modō**: *in this way*; abl. of manner  
**ubi**: *when*; i.e. 'at this point' in time/place

ictus, -ūs m.: strike, blow, 4  
induō, -ere, induī, indūtum: put on, 8  
inspiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectum: look upon, 1  
īra, īrae f.: anger, 12  
magicus, -a, -um: magic, 5  
Medūsa, -ae f.: Medusa, 6  
Minerva, -ae f.: Minerva, 4  
occidō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus: kill, cut down, 14  
propter: on account of, because of, 6  
rapiō, -ere, rapuī, raptum: to seize, snatch, 5  
sommus, -ī m.: sleep, 14  
speculum, -ī n.: mirror, 3  
tergum, -ī n.: back, 8  
vertō, -ere, vertī, versum: to turn, 4

6 **īrā**: *by anger*; abl. of cause or means  
**commōtae sunt**: *were moved*; they are  
moved emotionally, not physically

## 6. THE SEA-SERPENT

Post haec Perseus in fīnēs Aethiopum vēnit. Ibi Cēpheus quīdam 1  
illō tempore regnābat. Hīc Neptūnum, maris deum, ōlim  
offenderat; Neptūnus autem mōnstrum saevissimum mīserat. Hoc  
cotīdiē ē marī veniēbat et hominēs devorābat. Ob hanc causam  
pavor animōs omnium occupāverat. Cēpheus igitur ōrāculum dē 5  
Hammōnis cōnsuluit, atque ā deō iussus est filiam mōnstrō trādere.  
Eius autem filia, nōmine Andromeda, virgō fōrmōsissima erat.  
Cēpheus ubi haec audīvit, magnum dolōrem percēpit. Volēbat  
tamen cīvēs suōs ē tantō perīculō extrahere, atque ob eam causam  
imperāta Hammōnis facere cōstituit. 10

**Aethiopēs, -um m.**: Ethiopians, 2

**Andromeda, -ae f.**: Andromeda, 4

**Cepheus, -i m.**: Cepheus, 5

**cīvis, -is m/f.**: citizen, fellow citizen, 5

**consulō, consulere, consuluī, consultum**: to  
consult, 3

**cottīdiē**: daily, 2

**dēvorō (1)**: swallow down, devour, 4

**extrahō, -ere, -traxī, -tractum**: draw out, 2

**fīnis, -is m/f.**: end, limit, border, boundary, 12

**formōsus, -a, -um**: shapely, beautiful, 2

**Hammōn, -ōnis m.**: Hammon (Jupiter), 2

**imperō (1)**: order, command, 12

**Neptūnus, -i m.**: Neptune, 4

**nōmen, nōminis, n.**: name, 12

**ob**: on account of (*acc.*), 13

**occupō (1)**: occupy, seize, 8

**offendō, -ere, offendī, offensum**: offend, 1

**ōlim**: once, formerly, 10

**ōrāculum, -i n.**: oracle, 11

**pavor, pavōris m.**: terror, panic, 1

**percipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum**: receive,  
perceive, get, 5

**regnō (1)**: to rule, reign, 3

**saevus, -a, -um**: savage, fierce, 3

**virgō, virginis f.**: maiden, 2

1 **in fīnēs**: *into the borders*; usual meaning

2 **illō tempore**: *at...*; abl. of time when

**Hīc**: note that the ‘*H*’ distinguishes this  
adverb from the pronoun *hic*, ‘this one’

3 **savissimum**: superlative adj. saevus

**Hoc**: *this one*; neut. sg. subject; “this  
(monster),” monstrum is neuter

4 **marī**: abl. sg. 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. i-stem noun

5 **omnium**: gen. pl. 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. i-stem adj.

**dē Hammōnis**: *of the god Hammon*; a  
north African god often identified with

Jupiter/Zeus, sometimes spelled ‘Ammon’

6 **mōnstrō**: dat. sg. ind. obj. of *trādere*

7 **nōmine**: *by name*; abl. of respect

**virgō**: nom. sg. predicate

8 **haec**: *these (things)*; neut. acc. pl.

**volēbat**: impf. of *volō*, *velle*, ‘to wish,’  
not from *volō*, *volāre*, ‘to fly’

9 **ob eam causam**: *for this reason*

10 **imperāta**: *commands*; ‘things having  
been commanded’ neuter acc. pl. PPP  
(pf. pass. pple) *imperō*

## 7. A HUMAN SACRIFICE

Tum rēx diem certam dīxit et omnia parāvit. Ubi ea diēs vēnit, 1  
Andromeda ad lītus dēducta est, et in cōspectū omnium ad rūpem  
alligāta est. Omnēs fatum eius deplorābant, nec lacrimās tenēbant.  
At subitō, dum mōnstrum exspectant, Perseus accurrit; et ubi  
lacrimās vīdit, causam dolōris quaerit. Illī rem tōtam expōnunt et 5  
puellam demōnstrant. Dum haec geruntur, fremitus terribilis  
audītur; simul mōnstrum horribilī speciē procul cōspicitur. Eius  
cōspectus timōrem maximum omnibus iniēcit. Mōnstrum magnā  
celeritāte ad lītus contendit, iamque ad locum appropinquābat ubi  
puella stābat. 10

- accurrō, -ere, -cucurrī, -cursum:** to run to, 2  
**adligō (1):** bind to, tie to, 2  
**Andromeda, -ae f.:** Andromeda, 4  
**appropinquō (1):** come near, approach, 8  
**celeritās, -tatis f.:** speed, quickness, 7  
**certus, -a, -um:** fixed, sure, 11  
**conspectus, -ūs m.:** sight, view, 6  
**contendō, -ere, -i, -tus:** strive; hasten; fight 11  
**dēdūcō, -ere:** lead or bring down, launch, 10  
**dēmonstrō (1):** to show, demonstrate, 13  
**deplorō (1):** lament, weep, 1  
**expōnō, -ere, -suī, -situm:** set out, explain 7  
**fātum, -i n.:** fate, ruin, death, 2  
**fremitus, -ūs m.:** roaring, roar, 2

- 1 **diem certam dīxit:** appointed a...day  
**omnia:** neut pl. acc. 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. i-stem  
**ea:** this; is, ea, id as an adj. is a  
demonstrative which can be translated  
as “this/these” or “that/those”  
3 **eius:** her; gen. fem. sg. is, ea, id

- horribis, -e:** horrible, dreadful, 11  
**iniciō, -ere, -iēci, -iectum:** throw in or upon, 2  
**lacrima, -ae f.:** tear, 10  
**maximus, -a, -um:** greatest, 9  
**nec:** and not, nor, 10  
**procul:** from afar, from a distance, 5  
**puella, -ae f.:** girl, 8  
**rūpēs, rūpis f.:** rock, cliff, 6  
**simul:** at the same time; at once, together, 10  
**stō (1):** to stand, 8  
**teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum:** to hold, keep 13  
**terribilis, -e:** terrible, dreadful, 5  
**tōtus -a, -um:** whole, entire, 14

- expōnunt:** explain; ‘set out (in detail)’  
7 **horribilī speciē:** of...; see p. 5, line 14  
**eius:** of this one; or ‘of it,’ i.e. monstrum  
8 **omnibus:** upon all; dat. of compound verb  
**magnā celeritāte:** with..; abl. manner  
often ‘cum’ missing when there is an adj.

## 8. THE RESCUE

At Perseus ubi haec vīdit, gladium suum ēdūxit, et postquam tālāria 1  
induit, in āēra sublātus est. Tum dēsuper in mōnstrum impetum  
subitō fēcit, et gladiō suō collum eius graviter vulnerāvit. Mōnstrum ubi sēnsit vulnus, fremitum horribilem ēdedit, et sine  
morā tōtum corpus in aquam mersit. Perseus dum circum lītus 5  
volat, reditum eius exspectābat. Mare autem intereā undique  
sanguine īficitur. Post breve tempus belua rūrsus caput sustulit;  
mox tamen ā Perseō ictū graviōre vulnerāta est. Tum iterum sē in  
undās mersit, neque posteā vīsa est.

āēr, aēris n.: air, 7

aqua, -ae f.: water, 11

belua, -ae f.: beast, brute, monster, 1

circum: around, about, at, near (acc.), 1

collum, -ī n.: neck, 6

dēsuper: from above, 2

ēdō, -ere, ēdīdī, ēdītum: give out, put forth, 3

ēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum: lead out, draw, 3

fremitus, -ūs m.: roaring, roar, 2

gladius, -ī m.: sword, 10

horribis, -e: horrible, dreadful, 11

ictus, -ūs m.: strike, blow, 4

impetus, -ūs m.: attack, onset, assault, 9

induō, -ere, induī, indūtum: put on, 8

inficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum: stain, dye, 4

interēā: meanwhile, 7

2 sublātus est: 3<sup>rd</sup> sg. pf. pass. tollō

in mōnstrum: against...; often in an attack

impetum...fecit: made an attack

3 eius: his; 'of that one,' gen. sg.

4 ēdīdit: ē/ex + dedit, in compound verbs

iterum: again, a second time, 3

mergō, mergere, mersī, mersum: to sink, 3

mora, -ae f.: delay, hesitation, hindrance, 14

posteā: after this, afterwards, 7

reditus, -ūs m.: return, 5

rūrsus: again, backward, back, 7

sanguis, sanguinis m.: blood, 6

talāria, -īum: winged shoes, 4

tollō, tolle, sustulī, sublātum: raise, lift up 10

tōtus -a, -um: whole, entire, 14

unda, -ae f.: wave, 1

undique: from everywhere, from all sides, 7

volō (1): to fly, 3

vulnerō (1): wound, injure, 7

vulnus, -eris n.: wound, blow, 6

vowels 'a' and 'e' often become 'I'

7 sustulit: pf. tollō, belua is subject

8 graviōre: graver; or 'more serious,'

abl. sg. comparative adj. gravis, -e

## 9. THE REWARD OF VALOR

Perseus postquam ad lītus dēscendit, prīmum tālāria exuit; tum ad rūpem vēnit ubi Andromeda vincita erat. Ea autem omnem spem salūtis dēposuerat, et ubi Perseus adiit, terrōre paene exanimāta erat. Ille vincula statim solvit, et puellam patrī reddidit. Cēpheus ob hanc rem maximō gaudiō affectus est. Meritam grātiā pō tantō beneficiō Perseō rettulit; praetereā Andromedam ipsam eī in matrimōnium dedit. Ille libenter hoc donum accēpit et puellam dūxit. Paucōs annōs cum uxōre suā in eā regiōne habitābat, et in magnō honōre erat apud omnēs Aethiopēs. Magnopere tamen mātrem suam rursus vidēre cupiēbat. Tandem igitur cum uxōre suā ē regnō Cēpheī discessit.

**adeō, -tre, -i(v)ī:** go to, approach, 4

**Aethiopēs, -um m.:** Ethiopians, 2

**afficiō, -ere, -fēcī, fectum:** influence, treat, 13

**Andromeda, -ae f.:** Andromeda, 4

**apud:** among, in the presence of (+ acc.), 9

**beneficiūm, -ī n.:** benefit, favor; kindness, 8

**Cepheus, -ī m.:** Cepheus, 5

**cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītūm:** desire, long for, 4

**dēponō, -ere, -suī, -sītūm:** put down or aside 9

**dēscendō, -ere, -ndī, -nsum:** descend, 4

**discēdō, -ere, -ssī, -ssum:** go away, depart, 4

**dōnum, -ī n.:** gift, 6

**ducō, -ere, dūxī, dūctus:** lead, draw, bring, 5

**examīnō (1):** to kill, exhaust, 9

**exuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtūm:** take off, put off, 1

**gaudium, -ī n.:** gladness, joy, 9

**grātiā, -ae f.:** gratitude, favor, thanks, 10

**honor, -ōris m.:** honor, glory; offering, 4

**libenter:** gladly, willingly, 12

**mater, matris f.:** mother, 9

**matrimōnium, -ī n.:** marriage, 6

**maximus, -a, -um:** greatest, 9

**meritus, -a, -um:** deserved, due, just, 4

**ob:** on account of (acc.), 13

**paene:** almost, nearly, 8

**pater, patris, m.:** father, 12

**praetereā:** besides, moreover, 3

**pō:** before, in front of, for, 9

**puella, -ae f.:** girl, 8

**reddō, ere, -dīdī, -dditūm:** give back, return 4

**rūpēs, rūpis f.:** rock, cliff, 6

**rūrsus:** again, backward, back, 7

**spēs, -eī f.:** hope, 15

**talāria, -iūm:** winged shoes, 4

**terror, terrōris m.:** terror, fright, 4

**uxor, ūxoris f.:** wife, spouse, 10

**vinciō, -īre, vīnxī, vīncutus:** bind, tie, 4

**vinculum, -ī n.:** bond, chain, 4

1 **prīmum:** first (of all); adverbial acc.

3 **salūtis:** for safety; objective gen., it is equivalent to the obj. of a verb ‘hope’

compare to red-it from red-eō (go back)

5 **maximō gaudiō:** with...; abl. manner, without “cum” when modified by adj.  
**pō:** (in return) for...

4 **patrī:** dat. ind. obj. of rē + dedit  
**reddidit:** red-dedit, pf. red-dō (give back),

6 **rettulit:** pf. referō with a dat. ind. obj.

**eī:** dat. sg., is, ea, id

8 **paucōs annōs:** for...; acc. of duration

## 10. POLYDECTES IS TURNED TO STONE

Postquam Perseus ad īnsulam nāvem appulit, sē ad locum contulit 1  
ubi mater ūlīm habitāverat, sed domum invēnit vacuam et omnīnō  
dēsertam. Trēs diēs per tōtam īnsulam mātrem quaerēbat; tandem  
quartō diē ad templum Diānae pervēnit. Hūc Danaē refūgerat, quod  
Polydectem timēbat. Perseus ubi haec cognōvit, īrā magnā 5  
commōtus est; ad rēgiam Polydectis sine morā contendit, et ubi eō  
vēnit, statim in ātrium irrūpit. Polydectēs magnō timōre affectus est  
et fugere volēbat. Dum tamen ille fūgit, Perseus caput Medūsae  
mōnstrāvit; ille autem simul atque hoc vīdit, in saxum versus est.

afficiō, -ere, -fēcī, fectum: influence, treat, 13  
appellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsī: drive to, 14  
atrium, atrī n.: atrium, 3  
commoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum: move,  
trouble, upset, 14  
contendō, -ere, -ī, -tus: strive; hasten; fight 11  
Danaē, -ēs f.: Danae, 5  
deserō, -ere, -uī, -seratum: to desert, 2  
Diāna, -ae f.: Diana, 1  
domus, -ūs f.: house, home, dwelling, 11  
fugiō, fugere, fūgī, --: to flee, hurry away, 9  
hūc: to this place, hither, 2  
inrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum: burst in, 2  
inveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum: find, discover 8  
īra, īrae f.: anger, 12  
mater, matris f.: mother, 9

- 1 sē contulit: *carried himself*; pf. cōnferō, a common expression for ‘went,’ ‘moved’
- 2 domum: fem. sg. modified by 2 adjectives
- 3 trēs diēs: *for...*; acc. of duration
- 4 quartō diē: *at...*; abl. time when  
hūc: *(to) here*; see also hīc and hinc
- 5 haec: *these (things)*; neut. substantive

Medūsa, -ae f.: Medusa, 6  
monstrō (1): to show, demonstrate, 3  
mora, -ae f.: delay, hesitation, hindrance, 14  
ōlim: once, formerly, 10  
omnīnō: altogether, wholly, entirely, 11  
Polydectēs, -is m.: Polydectes, 7  
quartus, -a, -um: one-fourth, 3  
refugiō, -ere, -fūgī: flee back, 5  
rēgia, -ae f.: palace, 4  
simul: at the same time; at once, together, 10  
templum, -ī n.: temple, 3  
timeō, -ēre, -uī: fear, dread, 6  
tōtus -a, -um: whole, entire, 14  
trēs, tria: three, 9  
vacuus, -a, -um: empty, fear, vacant, 1  
vertō, -ere, vertī, versum: to turn, 4

- 6 īrā...commōtus est: see p. 5, line 24
- 6 contendit: *hastened*; common in Caesar  
eō: *(to) there*; adv.; ibi is “there,” inde is “from there,” and eō is “to there”
- 7 magnō timōre: abl. of means
- 9 simul atque: *as soon as*; ‘at the same time as’

## II. THE ORACLE FULFILLED

Post haec Perseus cum uxōre suā ad urbem Acrisī rediit. Ille autem ubi Perseum vīdit, magno terrōre affectus est; nam propter ūrāculūm istud nepōtem suum adhuc timēbat. In Thessaliam 5 igitur ad urbem Larīsam statim refūgit, frustrā tamen; neque enim fātum suum vītāvit. Post paucōs annōs rēx Larīsae ludōs magnōs fēcit; nuntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīserat et diem ēdixerat. Multū ex omnibus urbibus Graeciae ad lūdōs convēnērunt. Ipse Perseus inter aliōs certāmen discōrum iniit. At dum discum conicit, avum suum cāsū occīdit; Acrisiūs enim inter spectātōrēs eius certāminis forte stābat.

10

**Acrisiūs, -īī m.**: Acrisiūs, 4

**adhuc**: still, 5

**afficiō, -ere, -fēcī, fectum**: influence, treat, 13

**alius, -a, -ud**: other, another, else, 9

**avus, avī m.**: grandfather, 2

**cāsus, -ūs m.**: misfortune, accident, event, 8

**certāmen, -minis n.**: struggle, contest, 2

**conicō, -ere, -iēcī**: throw together, throw, take oneself, 13

**conveniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum**: come together 8

**dīmittō, -ere, -mīstī, --**: send away, let go, 8

**discus, -ī m.**: discus, 2

**ēdicō, -ere, -dīxī, dictum**: declare, proclaim, 4

**fātum, -ī n.**: fate, ruin, death, 2

forte

**frustrā**: in vain, for nothing, 13

**Graecia, -ae f.**: Greece, 7

**ineō, -īre, -īī, -itum**: go into, enter, 4

**inter**: between, among (+ acc.), 10

**iste, ista, istud**: that or those (of yours), 7

**Larīsa, -ae f.**: Larisa, 2

**lūdus, -ī m.**: game, sport; school, 2

**nam**: for, 6

**nepōs, nepōtis m.**: grandson, decendant, 2

**nuntius, -īī m.**: messenger, 12

**occidō, -ere, -cidī, -cīsus**: kill, cut down, 14

**ōrāculūm, -ī n.**: oracle, 11

**propter**: on account of, because of, 6

**refugiō, -ere, -fūgī**: flee back, 5

**spectātōr, -tōris m.**: spectator, observer, 1

**stō (1)**: to stand, 8

**terror, terrōris m.**: terror, fright, 4

**Thessalia, -ae f.**: Thessaly, 4

**timeō, -ēre, -uī**: fear, dread, 6

**uxor, ūxōris f.**: wife, spouse, 10

**vītō (1)**: to avoid, 2

1 **rediit**: pf. red-eō

7 **ēdixerat**: appointed

2 **magnō terrōre**: abl. of means

8 **ad**: for...; ad often expresses purpose

3 **istud**: neut. sg. with ūrāculūm (cf. illud)

9 **iniit**: pf. in-eō

4 **frustrā**: adverb

10 **cāsū**: by chance; 4<sup>th</sup> decl. abl. of manner

5 **fēcit**: produced; i.e. organized

**eius**: of that...; demon. adjective

6 **partēs**: directions

**forte**: by chance; abl. as adverb, förs

## 12. THE HATRED OF JUNO

Herculēs, Alcmēnae fīlius, ōlim in Graeciā habitābat. Hic omnium 1  
hominum validissimus fuisse dīcitur. At Iūnō, regīna deōrum,  
Alcmēnam ūderat et Herculem adhuc īfantem necāre voluit. Mīsit  
igitur duās serpentēs saevissimās; hae mediā nocte in cubiculum  
Alcmēnae venērunt, ubi Herculēs cum fratre suō dormiēbat. Nec 5  
tamen in cūnīs, sed in scūtō magnō cubābant. Serpentēs iam  
appropinquāverant et scūtum movēbant; itaque puerī ē somnō  
excitātī sunt.

**adhuc:** still, 5

**Alcmena, -ae f.:** Alcmena, 4

**appropinquō (1):** come near, approach, 8

**cubiculum, -ī n.:** bedroom, 1

**cubō (1):** to lie down, recline, 1

**cūnae, -ārum f.:** cradle, 1

**dormiō, -ire, -īvī:** to sleep, 8

**duo, duea, duo:** two, 10

**excitō (1):** excite, rouse, incite, 8

**filius, -ī m.:** son, 10

**frāter, -tris m.:** brother, 5

**Graecia, -ae f.:** Greece, 7

**infāns, -fantis m. f.:** infant, 2

**itaque:** and so, 8

**Iūnō, -ōnis m.:** Juno, 3

**medius, -a, -um:** middle of, 10

**moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum:** move, arouse, 3

**nec:** and not, nor, 10

**necō (1):** to kill, slay, put to death, 9

**nox, noctis, f.:** night, 7

**ōdī, -isse:** to hate, 1

**ōlim:** once, formerly, 10

**regīna, -ae f.:** queen, 2

**saevus, -a, -um:** savage, fierce, 3

**scūtum, -ī n.:** shield, 2

**serpēns, serpentis f.:** serpent, 6

**somnus, -ī m.:** sleep, 14

**validus, -a, -um:** strong, 1

1 **omnium hominum:** of...; partitive gen.

**fuisse dīcitur:** is said to have been; pf.

inf. sum; superlative validissimus as pred.

3 **ōderat:** plpf., simple past in sense

4 **hae (serpentēs):** these; nom. subject

**mediā nocte:** in...; abl. of time when

### 13. HERCULES AND THE SERPENTS

Īphiclēs, frāter Herculis, magnā vōce exclāmāvit; sed Herculēs ipse, 1  
fortissimus puer, haudquāquam territus est. Parvīs manibus  
serpentēs statim prehendit, et colla eārum magnā vī compressit.  
Tālī modō serpentēs ā puerō interfectae sunt. Alcmēna autem, māter  
puerōrum, clamōrem audīverat, et marītum suum ē somnō 5  
excitāverat. Ille lūmen accedit et gladium suum rapuit; tum ad  
puerōs properābat, sed ubi ad locum vēnit, rem mīram vīdit,  
Herculēs enim rīdēbat et serpentēs mortuās mōnstrābat.

accendō, -ere, -ndī, -nsum: kindle, light, 2  
Alcmena, -ae f.: Alcmena, 4  
clāmor, -ōris m.: shout, roar, applause, 4  
collum, -ī n.; neck, 6  
comprimō, -ere, -pressī: press together, 2  
excitō (1): excite, rouse, incite, 8  
exclāmō (1): cry out, 3  
fortis, -e: strong, brave, valiant, 5  
frāter, -tris m.: brother, 5  
gladius, -ī m.: sword, 10  
haudquāquam: not at all, in no way, 2  
Īphiclēs, -is m.: Iphicles, 1  
lūmen, lūminis n.: light, 3  
maritus, -ī m.: husband, 3

1 magnā vōce: *in a loud...*; abl. of manner,  
loses prep. ‘cum’ when there is an adj.  
3 magnā vī: *with great force*; abl. of manner;

mater, matris f.: mother, 9  
mīrus, -a, -um: wonderful, amazing, 7  
mortuus, -a, -um: dead, 7  
parvus, -a, -um: small, 3  
prehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsum: seize, 5  
properō (1): to hasten, 1  
rapiō, -ere, rapuī, raptum: to seize, snatch, 5  
rideō, -ēre, rīsī, -rīsum: to laugh, 1  
serpēns, serpentis f.: serpent, 6  
sommus, -ī m.: sleep, 14  
tālis, -e: such, 6  
terreō, -ēre, -uī, territum: to terrify, scare, 5  
vōx, vōcis, f.: voice, 9

irreg. abl. sg. vīs  
4 tālī modō: *in such a way*; abl. of manner,  
abl. sg. 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. i-stem adj. tālis, -e

## 14. THE MUSIC-LESSON

Herculēs ā puerō corpus suum diligenter exercēbat; magnam 1 partem diēt in palaestrā consumēbat; didicit etiam arcum intendere et tēla conicere. Hīs exercitatiōnibus vīrēs eius confirmātae sunt. In musicā etiam ā Linō centaurō ērudiēbatur (centaurī autem equī erant sed caput hominis habēbant); huic tamen artī minus dīligenter 5 studēbat. Hic Linus Herculem oīlim obiurgābat, quod nōn studiōsus erat; tum puer īrātus citharam subitō rapuit, et omnibus vīribus caput magistrī īfēlīcis percussit. Ille ictū prostrātus est, et paulō post ē vītā excessit, neque quisquam posteā id officium suscipere 10 voluit.

**arcus, -ūs m.**; bow, 4  
**ars, artis f.**: skill, craft, art, 5  
**centaurus, -ī m.**: centaur, 12  
**cithara, -ae f.**: cithera, lyre, 1  
**confirmō (1)**: make strong, strengthen, 5  
**conicō, -ere, -iēcī**: throw together, throw, take oneself, 13  
**consūmō, -ere, -mpsī, -mptum**: take, spend 9  
**diligenter**: carefully, diligently, 3  
**discō, -ere, didici**: to learn, come to know, 1  
**equus, -ī m.**: horse, 7  
**ērudiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītūm**: instruct, 1  
**excēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum**: go out, depart, 2  
**exerceō, -ēre, -ūī, -ercitūm**: train, exercise, 1  
**exercitatiō, -tiōnis f.**: training, exercise, 1  
**ictus, -ūs m.**: strike, blow, 4  
**infēlīx, -felīcis**: unhappy, unfortunate, 2  
**intendō, -ere, -ndī, -ntum**: stretch out, aim, 4  
**īrātus, -a, -um**: angry, 5

- 1 **ā puerō**: from boyhood
- 2 **diēt**: partitive gen. sg. 5<sup>th</sup> decl. diēs
- 3 **didicit**: pf. discō
- 3 **vīrēs**: strength; fem. pl. of vīs, which translates as ‘force’ in the sg.
- 4 **eius**: gen. sg., is, ea, id
- 5 **huic...artī**: dat. sg. ars, artis f.; obj. of studeō, ‘be eager or enthusiastic for (dat.)’

**Linus, -ī m.**: Linus, 2  
**magister, magistrī m.**: teacher, 1  
**minus**: less, 1  
**mūsica, -ae f.**: music, 1  
**obiurgō (1)**: child, scold, reproach, 2  
**officium, -īī, n.**: duty, 2  
**oīlim**: once, formerly, 10  
**palaestra, -ae f.**: wrestling-court, 1  
**percutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussum**: strike, 2  
**posteā**: after this, afterwards, 7  
**prosternō, -ere, -strāvī, -ātum**: to lay out, 3  
**quisquam, quidquam**: anyone, anything, 4  
**rapiō, -ere, rapuī, raptum**: to seize, snatch, 5  
**studeō, -ēre, -ūī**: be eager, be enthusiastic, 1  
**studiōsus, -a, -um**: eager, diligent, studious, 1  
**suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum**: undertake, 14  
**telum, -ī n.**: weapon, arrow, spear, 3  
**vīta, -ae, f.**: life, 9

- 6 **minus**: comp. adv. modifies dīligenter
- 7 **vīribus**: cf. line 14, abl. of means, note that this word is 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. while vir, virī ‘man’ is 2<sup>nd</sup> decl.
- 8 **paulō**: (by) a little; abl. of degree of difference modifies adverbial post, ‘later’
- 9 **ē vītā excessit**: euphemism for dying
- 10 **id officium**: this duty; demon. adj.

## 15. HERCULES ESCAPES SACRIFICE

Dē Hercule haec etiam inter alia nārrantur. Ōlim dum iter facit, in 1  
finēs Aegyptiōrum vēnit. Ibi rēx quīdam, nōmine Būsīris, illō  
tempore rēgnābat; hic autem vir crūdēlissimus hominēs immolāre  
cōnsuēverat. Herculem igitur corripuit et in vincula coniēcit. Tum  
nūntiōs dīmisit et diem sacrificiō ēdīxit. Mox ea diēs appetēbat, et 5  
omnia rītē parāta sunt. Manūs Herculis catēnīs ferreīs vinctae sunt,  
et mola salsa in caput eius inspersa est. Mōs enim erat apud  
antīquōs salem et far capitibus victimārum impōnere. Iam victima  
ad āram stābat; iam sacerdōs cultrum sūmpserat. Subitō tamen  
Herculēs magnō cōnātū vincula perrūpit; tum ictū sacerdōtem 10  
prostrāvit; alterō rēgem ipsum occīdit.

Aegyptiī, -ōrum m.: Egyptians, 1

alius, -a, -ud: other, another, else, 9

alter, -era, -erum: other (of two), second, 7

antīquus, -a, -um: ancient, 3

appetō, -ere, -īvī, -petītūm: draw near, 3

apud: among, in the presence of (+ acc.), 9

āra, -ae f.: altar, 2

Būsīris, -idis m.: Busiris, 1

catēna, -ae f.: chain, 2

conātūs, -ūs m.: attempt, effort, 7

conīcō, -ere, -iēcī: throw together, throw, take oneself, 13

consuēscō, -ere, -ēvī, -suētūm: to accustom, 3

corripiō, -ere, -uī, -reptūs: snatch (up), 6

crūdēlis, -e: cruel, bitter, bloody, 6

cultēr, cultrī m.: knife, 1

dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, --: send away, let go, 8

ēdīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictūm: declare, proclaim,

4

fār, farris n.: spelt (wheat), sacrificial meal, 1

ferreus, -a, -um: of iron, iron, 1

finis, -is m./f.: end, limit, border, boundary, 12

ictus, -ūs m.: strike, blow, 4

immolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūm: sacrifice, 1

imponō, -ere, -posū, -positus: place on, 7

inspergō, -ere, -ersī, -ersum: sprinkle upon, 1

inter: between, among (+ acc.), 10

mola, -ae f.: meal, 1

mōs, mōris m.: custom, manner, law, 6

narrō (1): to narrate, relate, 7

nōmen, nōminis, n.: name, 12

nuntius, -īi m.: messenger, 12

occidō, -ere, -cidī, -cīsūs: kill, cut down, 14

ōlim: once, formerly, 10

perrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptūm: break through, 2

prosternō, -ere, -strāvī, -ātūm: to lay out, 3

regnō (1): to rule, reign, 3

rītē: duly, fitly, 1

sacerdōs, -dōtis m. f.: priest(ess), 2

sacrificiūm, -īi n.: sacrifice, 5

sāl, salis m.: salt, 1

salsus, -a, -um: salted, salty, 1

stō (1): to stand, 8

sumō, sumere, sumpsī, sumptūm: to take, 3

victima, -ae f.: victim, 2

vinciō, -īre, vīnxī, vīncutus: bind, tie, 4

vinculum, -ī n.: bond, chain, 4

1 Dē: about...

haec: these (things); neuter acc. pl.

2 nōmine: by name; abl. of respect

illō tempore: at...; abl. of time when

5 sacrificiō: for sacrifice; dat. of purpose

ēdīxit: appointed, proclaimed

ea diēs: this day; a demonstrative adj.

7 Mōs erat: it was the custom to; impersonal

8 capitibus: on...; dat. of compound verb

10 magnō cōnātū: with...; abl. of manner

11 alterō (ictū): with another blow; abl.

means

## 16. A CRUEL DEED

Herculēs iam adulēscēns Thēbīs habitābat. Rēx Thēbārum, vir 1  
ignāvus, Creōn appellābātur. Minyae, gēns bellicōsissima,  
Thēbānīs fīnitimī erant. Lēgātī autem ā Minyīs ad Thēbānōs  
quotannīs mittēbantur; hī Thēbās veniēbant et centum bovēs  
postulābant. Thēbānī enim ūlim ā Minyīs superātī erant; tribūta 5  
igitur rēgī Minyārum quotannīs pendēbant. At Herculēs cīvēs suōs  
hōc stipendiō liberāre cōnstituit; lēgātōs igitur comprehendit, atque  
aurēs eōrum abscīdit. Lēgātī autem apud omnēs gentēs sāctī  
habentur.

**abscīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum:** cut away or off, 5  
**adulēscēns, -entis:** young (man), youth(ful), 3  
**appellō (1):** call (by name), name, 12  
**apud:** among, in the presence of (+ acc.), 9  
**auris, -is f.:** ear, 1  
**bellicōsus, -a, -um:** warlike, 2  
**centum:** hundred, 3  
**cīvis, -is m/f.:** citizen, fellow citizen, 5  
**comprehendō, -ere, -dī, -sum:** grasp, seize, 3  
**Creon, -ontis m.:** Creon, 5  
**fīnitimus, -a, -um:** neighboring, bordering, 2  
**gēns, gentis f.:** clan, race, nation, herd, 4  
**ignavus, -a, -um:** lazy, cowardly, 2

**lēgātus, -ī m.:** ambassador, legate, 3  
**liberō (1):** to set free, release, 6  
**Minyae, -ārum f.:** Minyae, 5  
**ōlim:** once, formerly, 10  
**pendō, -ere, , pependī, pensum:** pay, hang, 1  
**postulō (1):** demand, claim, request, ask, 11  
**quotannīs:** every year, yearly, 2  
**sanctus, -a, -um:** sacred, holy, 1  
**stipendium, -ī n.:** tax, tribute, 1  
**superō (1):** to overcome, defeat, 3  
**Thēbae, -ārum f.:** Thebes, 4  
**Thēbānī, -ōrum m.:** Theban, 7  
**tribūtum, -ī n.:** tribute, tax, contribution, 1

- 1 **Thēbīs:** in Thebes; locative (place where)  
2 **Creōn:** nom. predicate  
**bellicōsissima:** superlative adj.  
3 **Thēbānīs:** to Thebans; dat. with a special  
adj. fīnitimī

- 4 **hī:** these; i.e. the lēgātī, envoys  
**Thēbās:** to Thebes; place to which, towns  
and cities do no require 'ad'  
6 **pendēbant:** used to pay; iterative impf  
7 **hōc stipendiō:** from...; abl. separation

## 17. THE DEFEAT OF THE MINYAE

Ergīnus, rēx Minyārum, ob haec vehementer īrātus statim cum omnibus copiis in fīnēs Thēbānōrum contendit. Creōn adventum eius per explorātōrēs cognōvit. Ipse tamen pugnāre nōluit, nam magnō timōre affectus erat; Thēbānī igitur Herculem imperātorem creāvērunt. Ille nuntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmisit, et cōpiās coēgit; tum proximō diē cum magnō exercitū profectus est. Locum idōneum dēlēgit et aciem īstrūxit. Tum Thēbānī ē superiōre locō impetum in hostēs fēcērunt. Illī autem impetum sustinēre nōn potuērunt; itaque aciēs hostium pulsa est atque in fūgam conversa.

aciēs, -ēt f.: sharp edge, battle line, army, 3  
adventus, -ūs m.: arrival, approach, 3  
afficiō, -ere, -fēcī, fectum: influence, treat, 13  
cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum: to learn, perf.  
know, 22  
cōgō, cōgere, -ēgī, -āctum: collect, compel, 5  
contendō, -ere, -ī, -ntus: strive; hasten;  
compete, 11  
convertō, -ere, -ī, -rsus: turn (around),  
reverse, 6  
copia, -ae f.: abundance, supply; troops, 10  
creō (1): to create, 2  
Creon, -ontis m.: Creon, 5  
dēlīgō, -ere, -lēgī, -lectum: choose, select, 6  
dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, --: send away, let go, 8  
Ergīnus, -ī m.: Erginus, 1  
exercitus, -ūs m.: army, 2  
explorātōr, -ōris m.: scout, spy, 1  
finis, -is m./f.: end, limit, border, boundary, 12  
idōneus, -a, -um: suitable, appropriate, 12

2 copiis: *troops*; as often in Caesar  
6 profectus est: *set out*; pf. dep. proficiscor

imperātor, -ōris m.: commander, 1  
impetus, -ūs m.: attack, onset, assault, 9  
instruō, -ere, -strūxī, -structum: equip, draw  
up, 6  
īrātus, -a, -um: angry, 5  
Itaque: and so, 8  
locus, -ī m.: place, region, situation;  
opportunity, 51  
Minyae, -ārum f.: Minyae, 5  
nam: for, 6  
nōlō, nōlle, nōlūt: not...wish, be unwilling 12  
nuntius, -ī m.: messenger, 12  
ob: on account of (*acc.*), 13  
proximō, -a, -um: nearest, next, 5  
pugnō (1): to fight, 4  
superior, -ius: higher, upper, 3  
sustineō, -ere, uī, -tentum: hold up, bear up 7  
Thēbānī, -ōrum m.: Theban, 7  
vehementer: strongly, violently, ardently, 11

8 in hostēs: *against...*; as often in battle  
9 in fūgam: *to flight*

## 18. MADNESS AND MURDER

Post hoc proelium Herculēs cōpiās suās ad urbem redūxit. Omnēs 1  
Thēbānī propter victoriā maximē gaudēbant; Creōn autem magnis  
honoribus Herculem decorāvit, atque filiam suam eī in  
matrimoniū dedit. Herculēs cum uxōre suā bēatam vītam agēbat; 5  
sed post paucōs annōs subitō in furōrem incidit, atque liberōs suōs  
ipse suā manū occīdit. Post breve tempus ad sanitātem reductus est,  
et propter hoc facinus magnō dolōre affectus est; mox ex urbe  
effūgit et in silvās sē recēpit. Nolēbant enim cīvēs sermōnem cum  
eō habēre.

**afficiō, -ere, -fēcī, fectum:** influence, treat, 13  
**agō, agere, ēgī, āctum:** drive, lead, spend, 13  
**beatus, -a, -um:** blessed, happy, 3  
**cīvis, -is m/f.:** citizen, fellow citizen, 5  
**copia, -ae f.:** abundance, supply; troops, 10  
**Creon, -ontis m.:** Creon, 5  
**decorō (1):** to adorn, distinguish, 2  
**effugiō, -ere, -fūgī:** flee away, escape, 1  
**facinus, facinoris n.:** bad deed, crime, 1  
**furor, -ōris m.:** rage, fury, madness, 4  
**gaudeō, -ere, gāvīsus sum:** enjoy, rejoice, 4  
**honor, -ōris m.:** honor, glory; offering, 4  
**incidō, -ere, -cidī:** fall into, fall upon, 3  
**liberī, -ōrum m.:** children, 1  
**matrimoniū, -ī n.:** marriage, 6

1 **cōpiās:** troops

3 **eī:** to him; dat. sg. ind. obj. is, ea, id

4 **agēbat:** lived; idiom with vītam

6 **ipse:** he himself; supply a subject

**maximē:** especially, very greatly, 5  
**nōlō, nōlle, nōluī:** not...wish, be unwilling 12  
**occidō, -ere, -cidī, -cīsus:** kill, cut down, 14  
**proelium, -ī n.:** battle, 4  
**propter:** on account of, because of, 6  
**recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum:** accept, take  
back, 8  
**redūcō, -ere, -xī, -ctus:** lead or bring back, 11  
**sānitās, -tātis f.:** soundness, sanity, 1  
**sermō, sermōnis m.:** conversation, talk, 2  
**silva, -ae f.:** wood, forest, woodland, 7  
**Thēbānī, -ōrum m.:** Theban, 7  
**uxor, ūxōris f.:** wife, spouse, 10  
**victōria, -ae f.:** victory, 1  
**vīta, -ae, f.:** life, 9

7 **affectus est:** was afflicted

8 **sē recēpit:** retreated; sē recipere is a  
common idiom for “retreat”

## 19. HERCULES CONSULTS THE ORACLE

Herculēs tantum scelus expiāre magnopere cupiēbat. Constituit 1  
igitur ad ὄrācūlūm Delphicūm īre; hoc enim ὄrācūlūm erat omnīū  
celeberrīmū. Ibi templū erat Apollinis plūrimīs dōnis ornātūm.  
Hōc in templō sedēbat fēmina quaedam, nōmine Pythia, et 5  
cōnsilium dabat eīs quī ad ὄrācūlū veniēbant. Haec autem femina  
ab ipsō Apolline docēbatur, et voluntātem deī hominibus  
ēnuntiābat. Herculēs igitur, quī Apollinem praecipuē colēbat, hūc  
vēnit. Tum rem tōtam expōsuit, neque scelus cēlāvit.

**Apollo, -inis m.**: Apollo, 7

**celeber, -bris, -bre**: frequented, celebrated, 2

**cēlō** (1): hide, conceal, 5

**colō, -ere, coluī, cultum**: cultivate, cherish, 3

**Delphicus, -a, -um**: Delphic, 1

**doceō, -ere, -uī, -ctus**: teach, tell, 9

**dōnum, -ī n.**: gift, 6

**ēnuntiō** (1): speak out, 1

**expiō** (1): expiate, 2

**expōnō, -ere, -suī, -situm**: set out, explain 7

**fēmina, -ae f.**: woman, 3

**hūc**: to this place, hither, 2

**nōmen, nōminis, n.**: name, 12

**ōrācūlū, -ī n.**: oracle, 11

**ōrnō** (1): to equip, adorn, 1

**plūrimus, -a, -um**: most, very many, 3

**praecipuē**: especially, 2

**Pythia, -ae f.**: Pythia, 4

**scelus, sceleris n.**: wickedness, crime, 4

**sedeō, -ere, sēdī, sessum**: to sit, 6

**templum, -ī n.**: temple, 3

**voluntās, -tātis f.**: will, wish, permission, 1

1 **tantum scelus**: neuter acc. sg.

2 **īre**: to go; inf. eō

**omnīū**: partitive gen. with superlative

3 **celeberrīmū**: predicate, superlative adj.

**erat...ornātūm**: ornātūm erat, plpf. pass.

5 **eīs**: dat. pl. ind. obj. with dabat

6 **hominibus**: dat. pl. ind. obj.

7 **colēbat**: used to worship; iterative

**hūc**: to here; place to which of hīc

**scelus**: neuter acc. sg.

## 20. THE ORACLE'S REPLY

Ubi Hercules finem fēcit, Pythia prīmō tacēbat; tandem tamen iussit 1  
eum ad urbem Tīrynthā īre, et Eurystheī rēgis omnia  
imperāta facere. Herculēs ubi haec audīvit, ad urbem illam  
contendit, et Eurystheō rēgī sē in servitūtem trādidit. Duodecim  
annōs crudelissimō Eurystheō serviēbat, et duodecim labōrēs, quōs 5  
ille imperāverat, cōnfēcit; hōc enim ūnō modō tantum scelus expiārī  
potuit. Dē hīs labōribus plūrima ā poētīs scripta sunt. Multa tamen  
quae poētae nārrant vix crēdibilia sunt.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <b>contendō, -ere, -i, -tus:</b> strive; hasten; fight 11 | <b>poēta, -ae m.:</b> poet, 4                              |
| <b>credibilis, -e:</b> credible, 2                        | <b>Pythia, -ae f.:</b> Pythia, 4                           |
| <b>crūdēlis, -e:</b> cruel, bitter, bloody, 6             | <b>scelus, sceleris n.:</b> wickedness, crime, 4           |
| <b>duodecim:</b> twelve, 6                                | <b>scrībō, -ere, scrīpsi, scrīptum:</b> write, 2           |
| <b>expiō (1):</b> expiate, 2                              | <b>serviō, -ire, -ivī, -itum:</b> to be slave to, serve, 1 |
| <b>finis, -is m./f.:</b> end, limit, border, boundary, 12 | <b>servitūs, servitūtis, f.:</b> servitude, 2              |
| <b>imperō (1):</b> order, command, 12                     | <b>taceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum:</b> be silent, 2               |
| <b>narrō (1):</b> to narrate, relate, 7                   | <b>Tiryns, Tirynthīs f.:</b> Tiryns, 1                     |
| <b>plūrimus, -a, -um:</b> most, very many, 3              | <b>vix:</b> with difficulty, with effort, scarcely, 5      |
- 1 **prīmō:** at first; adverb  
**īre:** to go; inf. eō
- 2 **Eurystheī rēgis:** gen. sg.
- 3 **imperāta:** commands; ‘things having been commanded’ neuter acc. pl. PPP (pf. pass. pple) of imperō
- 4 **Eurystheō rēgī:** dat. ind. obj.
- 5 **annōs:** for...; acc. of duration
- serviēbat:** served; governs a dative object
- 6 **hōc...ūnō modō:** in this one way; manner
- scelus:** nom. subj., neuter sg.
- expiārī:** passive inf. expiō, expiāre
- 7 **plūrima:** very many (things); neuter pl. subject, superlative of multus
- multa:** many things; subject

## 21. 1<sup>st</sup> LABOR: THE NEMEAN LION

Prīmū ab Eurystheō iussus est Herculēs leōnem occīdere quī illō 1 tempore vallem Nemeaeam reddēbat īfestam. In silvās igitur in quibus leō habitābat statim sē contulit. Mox feram vīdit, et arcum, quem sēcum attulerat, intendit; eius tamen pellem, quae dēnsissima erat, trāicere non potuit. Tum clāvā magnā quam semper gerēbat leonem percussit, frūstrā 5 tamen; neque enim hōc modō eum occīdere potuit. Tum dēmum collum mōnstrī bracchiīs suīs complexus est et faucēs eius omnibus vīribus compressit. Hōc modō leō brevī tempore examinatus est; nulla enim respīrandī facultās eī dabātur. Tum Herculēs cādaver ad oppidum in 10 umerīs rettulit; et pellem, quam dētrāxerat, posteā prō veste gerēbat. Omnēs autem quī eam regiōnem incolēbant, ubi fāmam dē morte leōnis accēpērunt, vehementer gaudēbant et Herculem magnō honōre habēbant.

- |  |   |   |
|--|---|---|
| <b>afferō, -ferre, attuli, allatum:</b> carry to bring | 5 | <b>intendō, -ere, -ndī, -ntum:</b> stretch out, aim,          |
| <b>arcus, -ūs m.:</b> bow, 4                           |   | <b>leō, leōnis m.:</b> lion, 5                                |
| <b>bracchium, -ī n.:</b> arm, 2                        |   | <b>mors, mortis, f.:</b> death, 9                             |
| <b>cadāver, -eris n.:</b> corpse, dead body, 3         |   | <b>Nemeaeus, -a, -um:</b> of Nemea, 1                         |
| <b>clāvā, -ae f.:</b> club, 1                          |   | <b>occidō, -ere, -cidī, -cīsus:</b> kill, cut down, 14        |
| <b>collum, -ī n.:</b> neck, 6                          |   | <b>oppidum, -ī n.:</b> town, 4                                |
| <b>complector, -plectī, -plexus sum:</b> embrace, 3    |   | <b>pellis, -is f.:</b> hide, skin, pelt, 2                    |
| <b>comprimō, -ere, -pressī:</b> press together, 2      |   | <b>percutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussum:</b> strike, 2             |
| <b>dēmum:</b> at length, finally, 3                    |   | <b>posteā:</b> after this, afterwards, 7                      |
| <b>densus, -a, -um:</b> thick, 2                       |   | <b>prō:</b> before, in front of, for, 9                       |
| <b>dētrahō, -ere, -axī, -actum:</b> draw away/off, 2   |   | <b>reddō, -ere, didī, dditum:</b> give back, return 4         |
| <b>examīnō (1):</b> to kill, exhaust, 9                |   | <b>respīrō (1):</b> to breathe back, breathe out, 2           |
| <b>facultās, -tatis f.:</b> ability, opportunity, 5    |   | <b>semper:</b> always, ever, forever, 2                       |
| <b>fāma, -ae f.:</b> fame, reputation, report, rumor 7 |   | <b>silva, -ae f.:</b> wood, forest, woodland, 7               |
| <b>faucēs, -ium f.:</b> throat, 2                      |   | <b>trāiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum:</b> pierce, throw across, 2 |
| <b>fera, -ae f.:</b> wild animal, beast, 1             |   | <b>umerus, -ī m.:</b> shoulder, 3                             |
| <b>frustrā:</b> in vain, for nothing, 13               |   | <b>vallis, -is f.:</b> valley, vale, 2                        |
| <b>gaudeō, -ere, gāvīsus sum:</b> enjoy, rejoice, 4    |   | <b>vehementer:</b> strongly, violently, ardently, 11          |
| <b>honor, -ōris m.:</b> honor, glory; offering, 4      |   | <b>vestis, -is f.:</b> clothing, 12                           |
| <b>incolō, -ere, -uī:</b> inhabit, 4                   |   |   |
| <b>infēstus, -a, -um:</b> unsafe, dangerous, 1         |   |   |
- 1 **prīmū:** first (of all); adverbial acc.  
**illō tempore:** at...; abl. time when  
3 **sē contulit:** carried himself, i.e. he went,  
  pf. cōfērō  
  sēcum: cum sē  
4 **attulerat:** plpf. afferō  
5 **gerēbat:** he was carrying  
  frustrā: in vain; adverb  
6 **hōc modō:** in this way; abl. of manner  
7 **complexus est:** a deponent verb; translate  
  as a perfect active verb
- vīribus:** with strength; abl. of means,  
  pl. of vīs, 'force,' 3<sup>rd</sup> declension endings  
  distinguish it from vir, virī  
8 **brevī tempore:** at...; abl. time when,  
  3<sup>rd</sup> decl. i-stem abl. sg.  
9 **respīrandī:** gen. sg. of the gerund (-ing)  
  modifying nom. sg. facultās  
  eī: dat. sg. indirect object of is, ea, id  
10 **rettulit:** pf. referō  
12 **magnō honōre:** in great honor

## 22. 2<sup>nd</sup> LABOR: THE LERNEAN HYDRA

Paulō post iussus est ab Eurystheō Hydram necāre. Hoc autem mōnstrum erat cui novem erant capita. Hercules igitur cum amīcō Iolaō profectus est ad palūdem Lernaeam, in quā Hydra habitābat. Mox mōnstrum invēnit, et quamquam rēs erat magni periculī, collum eius sinistrā prehendit. Tum dextrā capita novem abscīdere coepit; quotiēns tamen hoc fēcerat, nova 5 capita exoriēbantur. Diū frustrā laborābat; tandem hōc cōnātū dēstitit. Deinde arborēs succīdere et ignem accendere cōnstituit. Hoc celeriter fēcit, et postquam ligna ignem comprehendērunt, face ārdente colla adūssit, unde capita exoriēbantur. Nec tamen sine magnō labōre haec 10 fēcit; vēnit enim auxiliō Hydræ cancer ingēns, quī, dum Herculēs capita abscīdit, crūra eius mordēbat. Postquam mōnstrum talī modō interfēcit, sagittās suās sanguine eius imbuit, itaque mortiferās reddidit.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <b>abscīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum:</b> cut away or off, 5 | <b>itaque:</b> and so, 8                                |
| <b>accendō, -ere, -ndī, -nsum:</b> kindle, light, 2     | <b>labōrō (1):</b> work, toil, labor, strive, 2         |
| <b>adūrō, -ūrere, -ūssī, ūstum:</b> set fire to, burn 1 | <b>Lernaeus, -a, -um:</b> of Lerna, 1                   |
| <b>arbor, -is f.:</b> tree, 5                           | <b>līnum, -ī n.:</b> wood, 4                            |
| <b>ardeō, -ēre, arsī, arsum:</b> be on fire, burn, 3    | <b>mordeō, -ere, momordī, morsum:</b> bite, 1           |
| <b>cancer, -cancrī m.:</b> crab, 1                      | <b>mortifer, -fera, -ferum:</b> death-bearing, 2        |
| <b>celeriter:</b> swiftly, quickly, 1                   | <b>nec:</b> and not, nor, 10                            |
| <b>collum, -ī n.:</b> neck, 6                           | <b>necō (1):</b> to kill, slay, put to death, 9         |
| <b>comprehendō, -ere, -dī, -sum:</b> grasp, seize, 3    | <b>novem:</b> nine, 3                                   |
| <b>conātus, -ūs m.:</b> attempt, effort, 7              | <b>novus, -a, -um:</b> new, 4                           |
| <b>crūs, crūris n.:</b> leg, 1                          | <b>palūs, palūdis f.:</b> swamp, marsh, 3               |
| <b>deinde:</b> then, thereupon, 8                       | <b>prehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēsum:</b> seize, 5         |
| <b>dexter, -tra, -trum:</b> right (hand); favorable, 1  | <b>quamquam:</b> although, 4                            |
| <b>diū:</b> a long time, long, 13                       | <b>quotiēns:</b> as often as, 2                         |
| <b>exorior, -orīrī, -ortus sum:</b> arise from, rise, 2 | <b>reddō, ere, didī, -dditum:</b> give back, return, 4  |
| <b>fax, facis f.:</b> torch, firebrand, 2               | <b>sagitta, -ae f.:</b> arrow, 10                       |
| <b>frustrā:</b> in vain, for nothing, 13                | <b>sanguis, sanguinis m.:</b> blood, 6                  |
| <b>Hydra, -ae f.:</b> Hydra, 5                          | <b>sinistra, -ae f.:</b> left hand, 1                   |
| <b>ignis, ignis, m.:</b> fire, 9                        | <b>succīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum:</b> cut down or off, 1 |
| <b>imbuō, -uere, -buī, -būtum:</b> wet, soak, 2         | <b>tālis, -e:</b> such, 6                               |
| <b>inveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum:</b> find, discover 8  | <b>unde:</b> whence, from which source, 6               |
| <b>Iolāus, -ī m.:</b> Iolaus, 1                         |   |

- 1 **paulō:** *a little*; dat. of degree of difference  
 2 **cui...erant:** *(the one) to whom there were*; i.e. ‘who had’ or ‘whose...were’ dat. of possession is common with a form of sum  
**profectus est:** pf. dep. proficīscor, translate as pf. active  
 4 **magnī periculī:** *of great danger*; genitive of description in the predicative position  
**sinistrā (manū):** *with is left hand*; abl. means; as often supply ‘manū’  
 5 **dextrā (manū):** again, abl. of mean  
 6 **exoriēbantur:** impf. deponent

- frustrā:** *in vain*; adverb  
**hōc cōnātū:** *from...;* abl. of separation  
 7 **līna:** nom. subject, neuter plural  
**face ārdente:** abl. abs.; pres. pple ārdeō  
 10 **auxiliō Hydræ:** *as help for the Hydra*; ‘for help,’ double dative (dat. purpose and dat. of interest)  
 11 **eiūs:** gen. sg. is, ea, id; i.e. Heracles’  
**talī modō:** *in such a way*; abl. of manner, 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. i-stem abl.  
 12 **mortiferās reddidit:** *rendered (the arrows)* deadly; mortiferās is acc. pred.

### 23. 3<sup>rd</sup> LABOR: THE CERYNEAN STAG

Postquam Eurystheō caedēs Hydrae nuntiāta est, magnus timor 1  
animum eius occupāvit. Iussit igitur Herculem cervum quendam ad  
sē referre; nōluit enim virum tantae audāciae in urbe retinēre. Hic  
autem cervus, cuius cornua aurea fuisse trāduntur, incrēdibili 5  
celeritāte. Herculēs igitur prīmō vestigiīs eum in silvā  
persequēbatur; deinde ubi cervum ipsum vīdit, omnibus vīribus  
currere coepit. Ūsque ad vesperum currēbat, neque nocturnum  
tempus sibi ad quiētem relinquēbat, frustrā tamen; nūllō enim  
modō cervum cōsequī poterat. Tandem postquam tōtum annum  
cucurrerat (ita trāditur), cervum cursū exanimātum cēpit, et vīvum 10  
ad Eurystheum rettulit.

**audācia, -ae f.**: boldness, audacity, 2

**aureus, -a, -um**: golden, 13

**caedēs, -is f.**: slaughter, killing, 1

**celeritās, -tatis f.**: speed, quickness, 7

**cervus, -ī m.**: stag, 5

**consequor, -i, secūtus**: follow after; pursue, 3

**cornū, -ūs n.**: horn, 2

**currō, -ere, cucurri, cursus**: run, rush, fly, 4

**cursus, -ūs m.**: course, running, haste, 10

**deinde**: then, thereupon, 8

**exanimō (1)**: to kill, exhaust, 9

**frustrā**: in vain, for nothing, 13

**Hydra, -ae f.**: Hydra, 5

**incrēdibilis, -e**: incredible, 2

**nocturnus, -a, -um**: nocturnal, 2

**nōlō, nōlle, nōlui**: not...wish, be unwilling 12

**nuntiō (1)**: announce, 3

**occupō (1)**: occupy, seize, 8

**persequor, -sequi, -secūtus**: follow up, 1

**quiēs, quietis f.**: rest, repose, sleep, 5

**relinquō, -ere, -liqui, -lictum**: leave behind, 9

**retineō, -ēre, -ui, -tentum**: hold/keep back, 3

**silva, -ae f.**: wood, forest, woodland, 7

**usque**: all the way to, up to, continuously, 2

**vesper, vesperī m.**: evening, 4

**vestigium, -ī n.**: track, foot-print, 4

**vīvus, -a, -um**: living, alive, 4

3 **referre**: irreg. inf. of re-ferō

**tantae audāciae**: of...; gen. of description

4 **fuisse**: pf. inf. sum

**trāduntur**: are reported

**incrēdibili celeritāte**: of...; abl. of quality

5 **prīmō**: adverb

6 **persequēbātur**: impf. dep., translate act.

8 **sibi**: for him; dat. of interest

9 **cōsequī**: to catch up with; dep. inf.

10 **ita trāditur**: thus it is reported

## 24. 4<sup>th</sup> LABOR: THE ERYMANTHIAN BOAR

Tum vērō iussus est Herculēs aprum quendam capere quī illō 1 tempore agrōs Erymanthiōs vāstābat et incolās huius regionis magnopere terrēbat. Herculēs rem suscēpit et in Arcadiam profectus est. Postquam in silvam paulum prōgressus est, aprō occurrit. Ille autem simul atque Herculem vīdit, statim refūgit; et 5 timōre perterritus in altam fossam sē proīecit. Herculēs igitur laqueum quem attulerat iniēcit, et summā cum difficultāte aprum ē fossā extrāxit. Ille etsī fortiter repugnābat, nūllō modō sē liberāre potuit; et ab Hercule ad Eurystheum vīvus relātus est.

ager, -grī m.: land, field, territory, 11

altus, -a, -um: high, lofty, tall, 2

aper, arpī m.: wild boar, 3

Arcadia, -ae f.: Arcadia, 2

difficultās, -tātis f.: difficulty, 7

Erymanthius, -a, -um: of Erymanthus, 1

etsī: even if, although, though, 13

extrahō, -ere, -traxī, -tractum: draw out, 2

fortiter: bravely, 2

fossa, -ae f.: ditch, trench, 3

incola, -ae m.: inhabitant, 7

iniciō, -ere, -iēci, -iectum: throw in or upon, 2

laqueus, -ī m.: noose, 1

liberō (1): to set free, release, 6

occurrō, -ere: run into, meet, attack, 2

perterreō, -ere: frighten, terrify, 5

proiociō, -icere, -iēci, -iectum: throw forth, 4

refugiō, -ere, -fūgi: flee back, 5

repugnō (1): fight against, oppose, resist, 2

silva, -ae f.: wood, forest, woodland, 7

simul: at the same time; at once, together, 10

suscipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum: undertake, 14

terreō, -ere, -uī, territum: to terrify, scare, 5

vastō (1): lay waste, 2

vērō: in truth, in fact, certainly, 5

vīvus, -a, -um: living, alive, 4

1 illō tempore: *in...*; abl. of time when

4 profectus est: pf. dep. proficiscor, translate  
in the pf. active

paulum: adverbial acc.

progressus est: pf. dep. progredior

aprō: dat. obj. of a compound verb

5 simul atque: *as soon as*; ‘the same time as’

6 altam: *deep*

7 attulerat: pf. afferō

8 etsī: *although*

9 nūllō modō: *in no way*; abl. of manner

9 relātus est: pf. pass. re-ferō

## 25. HERCULES AT THE CENTAUR'S CAVE

Dē quartō labōre, quem suprā narrāvimus, haec etiam trāduntur. 1  
Herculēs dum iter in Arcadiam facit, ad eam regiōnem vēnit quam  
centaurī incolēbant. Cum nox iam appeteret, ad spēluncam dēvertit  
in quā centaurus quīdam, nōmine Pholus, habitābat.

Ille Herculem benignē excēpit et cēnam parāvit. At Herculēs 5  
postquam cenāvit, vīnum ā Pholō postulāvit. Erat autem in  
speluncā magna amphora vīnō optimō replēta, quam centaurī ibi  
dēposuerant. Pholus igitur hoc vīnum dare nolēbat, quod reliquōs  
centaurōs timēbat; nūllum tamen vīnum praeter hoc in speluncā  
habēbat. "Hoc vīnum," inquit, "mihi commissum est. Sī 10  
dabō, centaurī mē interficient." Herculēs tamen eum irrīsit, et ipse  
pōculum vīnī dē amorphā hausit.

**amphora, -ae f.**: amphora, jar, 3  
**appetō, -ere, -īvī, -petītūm**: draw near, 3  
**Arcadia, -ae f.**: Arcadia, 2  
**benignus, -a, -um**: kind, 4  
**cēna, -ae f.**: dinner, 5  
**cēnō (1)**: to dine, eat dinner, 2  
**committō, -mittere, -mīsī**: commit, entrust, 6  
**dēponō, -ere, -suī, -sītūm**: put down or aside9  
**dēvertō, -ere, -vertī**: turn away, turn aside, 1  
**excipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptūm**: receive, welcome9  
**hauriō, haurīre, hausī, -stūm**: drink, draw, 1  
**incolō, -ere, -uī**: inhabit, 4  
**inquam, inquis, inquit**: to say, 6  
**irrideō, -ere, -rīsī, -rīsum**: laugh at, mock, 1

- 1 **dē**: about  
**suprā**: above; i.e. earlier in the story  
**haec**: neut. pl. nom. subject  
**trāduntur**: are reported  
2 **eam**: that; demonstrative adj.  
4 **nōmine**: by name; abl. of respect  
5 **benignē**: -ē ending forms an adverb  
6 **Erat**: there was

**narrō (1)**: to narrate, relate, 7  
**nōlō, nōlle, nōluī**: not...wish, be unwilling 12  
**nōmen, nōminis, n.**: name, 12  
**nox, noctis, f.**: night, 7  
**optimus, -a, -um**: best, noblest, finest, 1  
**Pholus, -ī m.**: Pholus, 6  
**pōculum, -ī n.**: cup, 7  
**postulō (1)**: demand, claim, request, ask, 11  
**praeter**: except, besides, 2  
**quartus, -a, -um**: one-fourth, 3  
**repleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētūm**: fill again, fill, 4  
**suprā**: above, before, 6  
**timeō, -ēre, -uī**: fear, dread, 6

- 7 **replēta**: PPP (pf. pass. pple) repleō  
10 **mihi**: dat. ind. object  
**commissum est**: was entrusted  
**Sī...dabō, interficient**: If I give...will  
kill; fut. more vivid condition (sī, fut. ind.,  
fut. ind.), the protasis (dabō) in English  
translation is pres. in form but fut. in sense

## 26. THE FIGHT WITH THE CENTAURS

Simul atque amphora aperta est, odor iūcundissimus undique 1 diffūsus est; vīnum enim suāvissimum erat. Centaurī nōtum odorem sēnsērunt et omnēs ad locum convēnērunt. Ubi ad spēluncam pervēnērunt, magnopere īrātī erant quod Herculem bibentem vīdērunt. Tum arma rapuērunt et Pholūm interficere 5 volēbant. Herculēs tamen in aditū spēluncae cōstituit et impetum eōrum fortissimē sustinēbat. Facēs ārdentēs in eōs coniēcit; multōs etiam sagittīs suīs vulnerāvit. Hae autem sagittae eaēdem erant quae sanguine Hydræ oīlim imbūtae erant. Omnēs igitur quōs ille sagittīs vulnerāverat venēnō statim absūmptī sunt; reliquī autem 10 ubi hoc vīdērunt, terga vertērunt et fugā salūtem petiērunt.

**absumō, -ere, -mpsi, -mptum:** take away, 1

**aditus, -ūs m.:** approach, access, entrance, 2

**amphora, -ae f.:** amphora, jar, 3

**aperiō, -ire, -uī, -ertus:** open, disclose, 3

**ardeō, -ēre, arsī, arsum:** be on fire, burn, 3

**arma, -ōrum n.:** arms, equipment, tools, 6

**bibō, -ere, bibī:** drink, 4

**coniciō, -ere, -iēci:** throw together, throw, take oneself, 13

**conveniō, -ire, vēnī, ventum:** come together 8

**diffundō, -ere, -fūdi, -fūsum:** pour out, 1

**fax, facis f.:** torch, firebrand, 2

**fortis, -e:** strong, brave, valiant, 5

**fuga, -ae f.:** flight, haste, exile, speed, 6

**Hydra, -ae f.:** Hydra, 5

**imbuō, -uere, -buī, -būtum:** wet, soak, 2

**impetus, -ūs m.:** attack, onset, assault, 9

**īrātūs, -a, -um:** angry, 5

**iūcundus, -a, -um:** pleasant, sweet, 1

**nōtūs, -a, -um:** known, familiar, 3

**odor, odōris m.:** smell, odor, 2

**oīlim:** once, formerly, 10

**petō, petere, petīvī, petītum:** seek, aim at, 10

**Pholus, -ī m.:** Pholus, 6

**rapiō, -ere, rapuī, raptum:** to seize, snatch, 5

**sagitta, -ae f.:** arrow, 10

**sanguis, sanguinis m.:** blood, 6

**suāvis, -e:** sweet, pleasant, 1

**sustineō, -ēre, uī, -tentum:** hold up, endure, 7

**tergum, -ī n.:** back, 8

**undique:** from everywhere, from all sides, 7

**venēnum, -ī n.:** poison, 7

**vertō, -ere, vertī, versum:** to turn, 4

**vulnerō (1):** wound, injure, 7

1 **Simul atque:** as soon as; ‘at the same time as’

4 **īrātī:** angered; predicate nominative

5 **bibentem:** pres. pple bibō

7 **fortissimē:** very...; superlative adverb

**sustinēbat:** was holding off

**Facēs:** acc. pl. fax

**ārdentēs:** pres. pple ārdeō

**in:** ‘at’ or ‘against’ in context of fighting

8 **eaēdem:** the same; the suffix -dem does not decline, but eaē- modifies sagittae

10 **reliquī:** the remaining (centaurs)

11 **fugā:** in flight; abl. of mean

**peti(v)ērunt:** syncopated pf. petō

## 27. THE FATE OF PHOLUS

Postquam reliquī fūgērunt, Pholus ex spēluncā ēgressus est, et 1  
corpora spectābat eōrum quī sagittis interfectī erant. Magnopere  
autem mirātus est quod tam levī vulnere exanimāti erant, et causam  
eius reī quaerēbat. Adiit igitur locum ubi cādaver cuiusdam  
centaurī iacēbat, et sagittam ē vulnere trāxit. Haec tamen sīve cāsū 5  
sīve cōnsiliō deōrum ē manibus eius lapsa est, et pedem leviter  
vulnerāvit. Ille extemplō dolōrem gravem per omnia membra  
sēnsit, et post breve tempus vī venēnī exanimātus est. Mox  
Herculēs, quī reliquōs centaurōs secūtus erat, ad spēluncam rediit,  
et magnō cum dolore Pholū mortuum vīdit. Multīs cum lacrimīs 10  
corpus amicī ad sepultūram dedit; tum, postquam alterum pōculum  
vīnī exhausit, somnō sē dedit.

- adeō, -īre, -i(v)ī:** go to, approach, 4  
**alter, -era, -erūm:** other (of two), second, 7  
**amicūs, -ī m.:** friend, 6  
**cādāver, -erīs n.:** corpse, dead body, 3  
**cāsūs, -ūs m.:** misfortune, accident, event, 8  
**exanimō (1):** to kill, exhaust, 9  
**exhauriō, -īre, -ausī, -austum:** drink up, 1  
**extemplō:** immediately, straightaway, 1  
**fugiō, fugere, fūgī, --:** to flee, hurry away, 9  
**iaceō, -ēre, -uī:** to lie, lie low, 3  
**labor, lābī, lāpsum sum:** to slip, glide, 1  
**lacrima, -ae f.:** tear, 10  
**levis, leve:** light, slight, 2  
**leviter**  
**membrum, -ī n.:** limb, member, 10  
**mīror, -ārī, -ātus:** to wonder, be amazed at, 7

1 *reliquī: the remaining (centaurs)*

*ēgressus est:* pf. dep. ēgredior

2 *eōrum: of those;* demonstrative in sense

3 *levī vulnere:* abl. of means; i-stem 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. adj.

4 *eius reī:* of this matter; gen. sg.

*Adiit:* pf. ad-eō

*cuiusdam:* gen. sg. quīdam

5 *iacēbat:* from iaceō, iacēre, ‘to lie down’ not iaciō, iacere, ‘to throw’

*sīve...sīve:* whether...or

*cāsū:* by chance; abl. of cause, elsewhere

- mortuus, -a, -um:** dead, 7  
**pēs, pedis m.:** foot, 8  
**Pholus, -ī m.:** Pholus, 6  
**pōculum, -ī n.:** cup, 7  
**sagitta, -ae f.:** arrow, 10  
**sepeliō, -īre, -īvī, sepultum:** to bury, 1  
**sequor, -ī, secūtus:** follow, pursue, attend, 4  
**sīve:** or if, whether if, 6  
**somnus, -ī m.:** sleep, 14  
**spectō (1):** to watch, look at, 1  
**tam:** so, so much, so very, such, 8  
**trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractum:** to draw, drag, 6  
**venēnum, -ī n.:** poison, 7  
**vulnerō (1):** wound, injure, 7  
**vulnus, -erīs n.:** wound, blow, 6

*cāsūs* means ‘misfortune’

6 *cōnsilō:* by the plan; abl. of cause

*lāpsa est:* pf. deponent

*eiūs:* gen. sg., i.e. Pholus

7 *extemplō:* adverb

8 *vī:* abl. of means, vīs

*venēnī:* gen. sg.

9 *secūtus est:* pf. dep. sequor, translate act.

*rediit:* pf. red-eō

10 **magnō cum dolore, multīs cum lacrimīs:**  
abl. of manner, adj. is emphasized

## 28. 5<sup>th</sup> LABOR: THE AUGEAN STABLES

Deinde Eurystheus Herculī hunc labōrem graviorem impōsuit. 1  
Augēās quīdam, qui illō tempore rēnum in Ēlide obtinēbat, tria  
milia boūm habēbat. Hī in stabulō ingentis magnitūdinis  
inclūdēbantur. Stabulum autem inluviē ac squālōre erat obsitum,  
neque enim ad hoc tempus umquam purgātum erat. Hoc Hercules 5  
intrā spatium ūnūs diēt purgāre iussus est. Ille, etsī rēs erat multae  
operae, negōtium suscēpit. Prīnum magnō labōre fossam  
duodēvīgintī pedum dūxit, per quam flūminis aquam dē montibus  
ad murum stabulī perdūxit. Tum postquam mūrum perrūpit, aquam  
in stabulum immīsit et tālī modō contrā opīniōnem omnium opus 10  
cōnfēcit.

ac: and, and also, 14

aqua, -ae f.: water, 11

Augēās, -ae m.: Augeas, 1

contrā: *against* (+ acc.), 7

deinde: then, thereupon, 8

ducō, -ere, dūxī, dūctus: lead, draw, bring, 5

duo-de-viginti: eighteen, 1

Ēlis, -idis f.: Elis, 1

etsī: even if, although, though, 13

fossa, -ae f.: ditch, trench, 3

immittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum: send, et in, 2

imponō, -ere, -posuī, -positus: place on, 7

inclūdō, -ere, -ūsī, -ūsum: close in, shut in, 7

inluviēs, -ērī f.: dirt, filth, 1

intrā: within, among (+ acc.), 4

mīlle (pl. mīlia): thousand, 7

mons, montis m.: mountain, mount, 5

mūrus, -ī m.: (city) wall, rampart, 4

1 graviorem: comparative adjective

3 bo(v)ūm: *of cattle*; gen. pl. bōs

ingentis magnitūdinis: gen. of description

5 ad hoc tempus: *up to...., until...*

6 ūnūs diēt: *of one day*; gen. sg., ūnus has  
-īus in the gen. sg. and -ī in dat. sg.

multae operaे: *of...*; gen. description as

negōtium, ī n.: task, business, occupation, 13

obsitus, -a, -um: overgrown or covered with 1

obtineō, -ēre, -ūtī, -tentum: hold, maintain, 9

opera, -ae f.: effort, work, 1

opīniō, -iōnis f.: opinion, reputation, 6

opus, -eris n.: work, deed, toil, 9

perdūcō, -ere, -xī, -ctum: lead through, 4

perrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum: break  
through, 2

pēs, pedis m.: foot, 8

purgō (1): to cleanse, make clean, 2

spatiū, -ī n.: space, span, extent, 6

squālor, -ōris m.: dirt, filth, 1

stabulum, -ī n.: stable, inclosure, 5

suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum: undertake, 14

tālis, -e: such, 6

trēs, tria: three, 9

umquam: ever, 5

predicate; gen. of 1<sup>st</sup> decl. opera, -ae f.

7 prīnum: adverb

8 pedum: gen. pl. of measure after fossam

dūxit: *drew up a ditch*; i.e. ‘dig’ or ‘build’

10 tālī modō: *in such a way*; abl. of manner

opīniōnem: *expectation*; with contrā

opus: neuter acc. sg. direct object

## 29. 6<sup>th</sup> LABOR: THE STYMPHALIAN BIRDS

Post paucōs diēs Herculēs ad oppidum Stymphālum iter fēcit; 1  
imperāverat enim eī Eurystheus ut avēs Stymphalidēs necāret. Hae avēs  
rostra aēnea habēbant et carne hominum vēscēbantur. Ille postquam ad  
locum pervēnit, lacum vīdit; in hōc autem lacū, quī non procul erat ab  
oppidō, avēs habitābant. Nūlla tamen dabātur appropinquandī facultās; 5  
lacus enim nōn ex aquā sed ē līmō cōnstituit. Herculēs igitur neque  
pedibus neque lintre prōgredī potuit.

Ille cum magnam partem diēt fristrā cōnsumpsisset, hōc cōnātū dēstitit  
et ad Volcānum sē contulit, ut auxilium ab eō peteret. Volcānus (quī ab  
fabrīs maximē colēbātur) crepundia quae ipse ex aëre fabricātus erat 10  
Herculī dedit. Hīs Herculēs tam acrem crepitum fēcit ut avēs perterritae  
āvolārent. Ille autem, dum āvolant, magnum numerum eārum sagittīs  
trānsfīxit.

- acer, acris, acre:** sharp; fierce, keen, 1  
**aēneus, -a, -um:** of bronze, 3  
**āēr, aēris n.:** air, 7  
**appropinquō (1):** come near, approach, 8  
**aqua, -ae f.:** water, 11  
**avis, avis f.:** bird, 4  
**āvolō (1):** to fly away, 2  
**carō, carnis f.:** flesh, meat, 4  
**colō, -ere, coluī, cultum:** cultivate, cherish, 3  
**conātūs, -ūs m.:** attempt, effort, 7  
**constō, -stāre, -stītū, -stītūm:** stand together,  
it is agreed, 6  
**consūmō, -ere, -mpsī, -mptūm:** take, spend 9  
**crepitus, -ūs m.:** rattle, clatter, 1  
**crepundia, -ōrum n.:** rattle, 1  
**dēsistō, -ere, -stītū, -stītūm:** desist, stop, 5  
**faber, fabrī m.:** smith, engineer, 2  
**fabricor, -ārī, -ātūs sum:** make, fashion, 1  
**facultās, -tātīs f.:** ability, opportunity, 5  
**frustrā:** in vain, for nothing, 13

- 2 **imperāverat:** had ordered (dat) that  
eī: dat. ind. obj. is, ea, id  
ut...necāret: that...; ind. command, impf.  
subj. in secondary seq. (main verb is in the  
past); you may translate this construction  
'that he kill' or often as an inf. 'to kill...'  
3 **vēscēbantur:** governs an abl. obj.  
5 **appropinquandī:** of approaching; a  
gen. sg. gerund modifying facultās  
6 **neque...neque:** neither...nor  
7 **prōgredī:** dep. inf. prōgredior, translate as

- imperō (1):** order, command, 12  
**lacūs, -ūs m.:** lake, 3  
**līmus, -ī m.:** mud, 1  
**linter, lintrīs f.:** boat, skiff, 3  
**maximē:** especially, very greatly, 5  
**necō (1):** to kill, slay, put to death, 9  
**numerūs, -ī m.:** number, multitude, 7  
**oppidū, -ī n.:** town, 4  
**perterreō, -ēre:** frighten, terrify, 5  
**pēs, pedis m.:** foot, 8  
**petō, petere, petīvī, petītūm:** seek, aim at, 10  
**procul:** from afar, from a distance, 5  
**rostrūm, -ī n.:** beak, 1  
**sagitta, -ae f.:** arrow, 10  
**Stymphalis, -idis:** of Stymphalus, 1  
**tam:** so, so much, so very, such, 8  
**trānsfigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixūm:** pierce, 4  
**vescor, vescī:** to feed on, eat (+ abl.) 3  
**Volcānus, -ī m.:** Vulcan, 13

- an active inf.  
8 **cum...cōnsumpsisset:** when...had spent;  
cum + plpf. subjunctive, translate in plpf.  
tense  
9 **hōc cōnātū:** from...; abl. of separation  
sē contulit: carried himself; pf. cōnferō  
11 **hīs:** for these (birds); dat. of interest  
ut...āvolārent: that...flew away; result  
clause, impf. subj. in secondary seq.

### 30. 7<sup>th</sup> LABOR: THE CRETAN BULL

Tum Eurystheus Herculī imperāvit ut taurum quendam ferōcissimum ex īnsulā Crētā vīvum referret. Ille igitur nāvem cōnscendit, et cum ventus idōneus esset, statim solvit. Cum tamen īnsulae iam appropinquāret, tanta tempestās subitō coorta est ut nāvis cursum tenēre non posset. Tantus autem timor animōs nautārum occupāvit ut paene omnem spem salūtis dēpōnerent. Herculēs tamen, etsī navigandī imperītus erat, haudquāquam territus est.

Post breve tempus summa tranquillitās cōnsecūta est, et nautae, quī sē ex timōre iam recēperant, nāvem incolumem ad terram appulērunt. Herculēs ē nāvī ēgressus est, et cum ad regem Crētae vēnisset, causam veniendī docuit. Deinde, postquam omnia parāta sunt, ad eam regiōnem contendit quam taurus vāstābat. Mox taurum vīdit, et quamquam rēs erat magnī periculī, cornua eius prehendit. Tum, cum ingentī labōre mōnstrum ad nāvem trāxisset, cum praedā in Graeciam rediit.

**appellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsī:** drive to, 14  
**appropinquō (1):** come near, approach, 8  
**conscendō, -ere, -ndī, -nsum:** climb aboard, 6  
**consequor, -i, secūtus:** follow after; pursue, 3  
**contendō, -ere, -i, -tus:** strive; hasten; fight 11  
**cōrīor, -orīrī, -ortus sum:** to arise, 4  
**cornū, -ūs n.:** horn, 2  
**Crēta, -ae f.:** Crete, 3  
**cursus, -ūs m.:** course, running, haste, 10  
**deinde:** then, thereupon, 8  
**dēponō, -ere, -suī, -situm:** put down or aside 9  
**doceō, -ere, -ui, -ctus:** teach, tell, 9  
**etsī:** even if, although, though, 13  
**ferōx, -ōcis:** fierce, savage, 1  
**Graecia, -ae f.:** Greece, 7  
**haudquāquam:** not at all, in no way, 2  
**idōneus, -a, -um:** suitable, appropriate, 12  
**imperītus, -a, -um:** inexperienced, 1

- 1 **Herculī:** Hercules; dat. obj. of imperāvit
- ut...referret: that...; ind. command with impf. subj. referō (secondary seq.) may be translated as inf. ‘to carry back...’
- 2 **cum...esset:** when..., impf. subj. of sum, translate just as impf. indicative
- 3 **appropinquāret:** impf. subj., see line 4
- ut...posset: that...was able; result clause, impf. subj. possum (secondary seq.)
- 5 **ut...dēpōneret:** that...carried off; result clause, impf. subj. (secondary seq)
- 6 **navigandī:** of sailing; gen. sg. gerund

**imperō (1):** order, command, 12  
**incolumis, -e:** inscathed, uninjured, safe, 7  
**nauta, -ae f.:** sailor, 3  
**navigō (1):** to sail, 5  
**occupō (1):** occupy, seize, 8  
**paene:** almost, nearly, 8  
**praeda, -ae f.:** plunder, spoils, 2  
**prehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēnum:** seize, 5  
**quamquam:** although, 4  
**recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum:** take back, 8  
**taurus, -ī m.:** bull, 7  
**teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum:** to hold, keep 13  
**terreō, -ere, -ui, territum:** to terrify, scare, 5  
**trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractum:** to draw, drag, 6  
**tranquillitās, -tātis f.:** calm, tranquility, 2  
**vastō (1):** lay waste, 2  
**ventus, -ī m.:** wind, 10  
**vīvus, -a, -um:** living, alive, 4

- modifies imperītus
- 8 sē...recēperant: had retreated; idiom
- 10 **cum...vēnisset:** when...; plpf. subj. of veniō, translate as plpf. indicative
- 11 **veniendī:** for coming; gen. sg. gerund here a objective genitive
- 13 **magnī periculī:** of great danger; gen. of description as predicate
- ingentī labōre:** with...; abl. of means or manner; i-stem 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. adj.
- 14 **trāxisset:** plpf. subj. trahō, see line 13
- rediit:** pf. red-eō

### 31. 8<sup>th</sup> LABOR: MAN-EATING HORSES OF DIOMEDE

Postquam ex īsulā Crētā rediit, Herculēs ab Eurystheō in Thraciam missus est, ut equōs Diomēdis reduceret. Hī equī carne hominum vēscēbantur; Diomēdēs autem, vir crudēlissimus, illīs obiciēbat peregrinōs omnēs quī in eam regiōnem vēnerant. Herculēs igitur magnā celeritāte in Thraciam contendit et ab Diomēde postulāvit ut equī sibi trāderentur. Cum tamen ille hoc facere nōllet, Herculēs īrā commōtus rēgem interfēcit et cādaver eius equīs obicī iussit.

Ita mīra rerum commutatiō facta est; is enim quī anteā multōs cum cruciātū necāverat ipse eōdem suppliciō necātus est. Cum haec nuntiāta essent, omnēs quī eam regiōnem incolēbant maximā laetitiā affecti sunt et Herculī meritam grātiā referēbant. Nōn modō maximīs honōribus et praemiīs eum dēcorāvērunt sed orābant etiam ut rēgnūm ipse susciperet. Ille tamen hoc facere nōlēbat, et cum ad mare rediisset, nāvem occupāvit. Ubi omnia ad navigandum parāta sunt, equōs in nāvī collocāvit; deinde, cum idōneam tempestātem nactus esset, sine morā ē portū solvit, et paulō post equōs in lītus Argolicum exposuit.

**afficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -:** influence, affect 13  
**antea:** before, earlier, formerly, previously, 7  
**Argolicus, -a, -um:** of Argolis, 1  
**cadāver, -eris n.:** corpse, dead body, 3  
**carō, carnis f.:** flesh, meat, 4  
**celeritās, -tatis f.:** speed, quickness, 7  
**commūtatiō, -tiōnis f.:** change, 2  
**conlocō (1):** place together, 1  
**contendō, -ere, -i, -tus:** strive; hasten; fight 11  
**Crēta, -ae f.:** Crete, 3  
**cruciātus, -ūs m.:** torture, 2  
**crūdēlis, -e:** cruel, bitter, bloody, 6  
**decorō (1):** to adorn, distinguish, 2  
**deinde:** then, thereupon, 8  
**Diomēdēs, -is m.:** Diomedes, 3  
**equus, -i m.:** horse, 7  
**expōnō, -ere, -suī, -sītum:** set out, explain 7  
**grātia, -ae f.:** graditude, favor, thanks, 10  
**honor, -ōris m.:** honor, glory; offering, 4  
**idōneus, -a, -um:** suitable, appropriate, 12  
**incolō, -ere, -uī:** inhabit, 4  
**īra, īrae f.:** anger, 12

2 **ut...reducēret:** *in order that...might;*  
 purpose clause, impf. subj. can be  
 translated “in order that” or “so that” or as  
 infinitives expressing purpose  
 3 **vēscēbantur:** dep. governs abl. object  
**illīs:** *at them;* dat. of compound verb

**laetitia, -ae f.:** joy, happiness, 3  
**maximus, -a, -um:** greatest, 9  
**meritus, -a, -um:** deserved, due, just, 4  
**mīrus, -a, -um:** wonderful, amazing, 7  
**mora, -ae f.:** delay, hesitation, hindrance, 14  
**nanciscō, nanciscī, nactus:** attain, meet, 7  
**navigō (1):** to sail, 5  
**necō (1):** to kill, slay, put to death, 9  
**nōlō, nōlle, nōluī:** not...wish, be unwilling 12  
**nuntiō (1):** announce, 3  
**obiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum:** throw or cast at, 3  
**occupō (1):** occupy, seize, 8  
**ōrō (1):** pray (for), entreat, beseech, 5  
**peregrīnus, -i m.:** stranger, foreigner, 1  
**portus, -ūs m.:** harbort, port, 3  
**postulō (1):** demand, claim, request, ask, 11  
**praemium, īi n.:** reward, 5  
**reducō, -ere, -xī, -ctus:** lead or bring back, 11  
**suppliciūm, -īi n.:** punishment, supplication, 5  
**suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum:** undertake, 14  
**Thrācia, -ae f.:** Thrace, 3  
**vescor, vescī:** to feed on, eat (+ abl.) 3

4 **magnā celeritāte:** *with...;* abl. of manner  
 5 **ut...trāderentur:** *that..be handed over...;*  
 ind. command, impf. subj.  
 6 **cum...nōlēt:** *when...;* impf. subj. nōlō  
 (inf. nōlle)  
 7 **cādaver:** neuter acc. direct object

### 31. 8<sup>th</sup> LABOR: MAN-EATING HORSES OF DIOMEDE

- equīs: *to ...; dat. of compound verb*  
obici: pres. pass. inf. ob-iciō  
8 is...quī: *for he who...*  
cum cruciātū: abl. of manner  
9 nuntiāta essent: *when...; plpf. pass. subj.*  
in a cum-clause, translate as as you would a  
plpf. pass. indicative  
10 eam: *this; demonstrative adj.*  
11 Herculi: *to Hercules; dat. ind. object*  
Nōn modō...sed...etiam: *not only...  
but also*  
honōribus, praemiīs: abl. of means
- 12 ut...susciperet: *that...undertake; impf.  
subj. in ind. command can alternatively be  
translated as an inf. ‘to undertake’*  
13 cum...rediisset: plpf. subj. red-eō,  
translate as plpf. indicative  
ad...: *for...; ad + acc. gerund (-ing)  
expresses purpose*  
14 in nāvī: 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. i-stem abl.  
15 nactus esset: plpf. deponent subj.,  
translate as a plpf. active indicative  
solvit: *set sail; ‘*  
paulō: *little; abl. of degree of difference*

## 32. 9<sup>th</sup> LABOR: THE GIRDLE OF HIPPOLYTE

Gēns Amāzonum dicitur omnīnō ex mulieribus cōnstitisse. Hae 1 summam scientiam reī mīlitāris habēbant, et tantam virtūtem adhibēbant ut cum virīs proelium committere audērent. Hippolytē, Amāzonum rēgīna, balteum habuit celeberrimum quem Mars eī dederat. Admētā autem, Eurystheī filia, fāmam dē hōc balteō 5 accēperat et eum possidēre vehementer cupiēbat. Eurystheus igitur Herculī mandāvit ut cōpiās cōgeret et bellum Amāzonibus īferret. Ille nuntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmisit, et cum magna multitudō convēniisset, eōs dēlegit quī maximum ūsum in rē militārī habēbant. 10

**adhibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum:** to apply, hold to, 4

**Admēta, -ae f.:** Admeta, 1

**Amāzonēs, -um f.:** Amazon, 7

**audeō, -ēre, ausus sum:** to dare, 1

**balteus, -eī m.:** belt, girdle, 5

**bellum, -ī, n.:** war, 6

**celeber, -bris, -bre:** frequented, celebrated, 2

**cōgō, cōgere, -ēgī, -āctum:** collect, compel, 5

**committō, -mittere, -mīsī:** commit, entrust, 6

**constō, -stāre, -stītū, -stītum:** stand together, it is agreed, 6

**conveniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum:** come together 8

**copia, -ae f.:** abundance, supply; troops, 10

**cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum:** desire, long for, 4

**dēlīgō, -ere, -lēgī, -lectum:** choose, select, 6

**dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus:** send away, let go, 8

**filia, -iae f.:** daughter, 20

1 **cōnstitisse:** to have consisted; pf. inf.

2 **reī mīlitāris:** of military affairs; gen. sg.

3 **ut...audēret:** so that...; impf. subj. of audeō, audēre in a result clause

**proelium committere:** begin battle; idiom

4 **celeberrimum:** superlative with balteum

eī: dat. ind. obj. is, ea, id

**gēns, gentis f.:** clan, race, nation, herd, 4

**Hippolytē, -ēs f.:** Hippolyte, 4

**inferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātūs:** bring on, wage, 3

**mandō (1):** to entrust, give, commit, 2

**Mars, Martis m.:** Mars, 1

**maximus, -a, -um:** greatest, 9

**mīlitāris, -e:** military, warlike, 3

**mulier, mulieris f.:** woman, 3

**multitudō, -tūdīnis f.:** multitude, 2

**nuntius, -iī m.:** messenger, 12

**omnīnō:** altogether, wholly, entirely, 11

**possideō, -ēre, possēdī, possessum:** possess 1

**regīna, -ae f.:** queen, 2

**scientia, -ae f.:** knowledge, wisdom, 6

**ūsus, ūsūs m.:** use, employment, 3

**vehementer:** strongly, violently, ardently, 11

**virtūs, -ūtis f.:** valor, manhood, excellence, 10

7 **Herculī:** dat. ind. obj.

**ut..cōgeret...īnferret:** that...force; impf.

subj. ind. command

**Amāzonibus:** on...; dat. of compound

verb

8 **partēs:** directions

9 **rē militārī:** military affairs

### 33. THE GIRDLE IS REFUSED

Hīs virīs Herculēs persuāsit, postquam causam itineris exposuit, ut sēcum iter facerent. Tum cum eīs quibus persuāserat nāvem cōscendit, et cum ventus idōneus esset, post paucōs diēs ad ūstium flūminis Thermōdontis appulit. Postquam in finēs Amazonum vēnit, nūntium ad Hippolytam mīsit, quī causam 5 veniendī doceret et balteum posceret. Ipsa Hippolytē balteum trādere volēbat, quod dē Herculis virtūte fāmam accēperat; reliquae tamen Amāzonēs eī persuāsērunt ut negāret. At Herculēs, cum haec nuntiāta essent, bellī fortūnam temptāre cōstituit.

Proximō igitur diē cum cōpiās ēdūxisset, locum idōneum dēlegit 10 et hostēs ad pugnam ēvocāvit. Amāzonēs quoque cōpiās suās ex castrīs ēdūxērunt et non magnō intervallō ab Hercule aciem īstrūxērunt.

aciēs, -ēt f.: sharp edge, battle line, army, 3  
Amāzonēs, -um f.: Amazon, 7  
appellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsī: drive to, 14  
balteus, -ēt m.: belt, girdle, 5  
bellum, -ī, n.: war, 6  
castra, -ōrum n.: camp, 1  
conscendō, -ere, -ndī, -nsum: climb aboard, 6  
copia, -ae f.: abundance, supply; troops, 10  
dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lectum: choose, select, 6  
doceō, -ere, -uī, -ctus: teach, tell, 9  
ēducō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum: lead out, draw, 3  
ēvocō (1): call out, challenge, 1  
expōnō, -ere, -suī, -sítum: set out, explain 7  
fāma, -ae f.: fame, reputation, report, rumor 7  
finis, -is m./f.: end, limit, border, boundary, 12  
fortūna, -ae f.: fortune, chance, luck, 3  
Hippolytē, -ēs f.: Hippolyte, 4

1 persuāsit: governs dat + ind. command  
2 quibus...: whom he had persuaded...  
3 esset: impf. subj. sum, translate impf.  
5 qui...doceret...posceret: who would...  
and would; relative clause of purpose; impf.  
subj.  
6 veniendī: gen. sg. gerund (-ing)  
Hippolytē: fem. nom. sg.

hostis, -is m./f.: stranger, enemy, foe, 5  
idōneus, -a, -um: suitable, appropriate, 12  
instruō, -ere, -ūxī, -uctum: equip, draw up, 6  
intervallum, -ī n.: interval, distance, 2  
negō (1): to deny, say that...not, 3  
nuntiō (1): announce, 3  
nuntius, -īt m.: messenger, 12  
ōstium, -īt n.: mouth, entrance, 3  
persuādeō, -ere, -suāstī, -suāsum: persuade, 9  
poscō, -ere, popōscī: ask, demand, 1  
proximus, -a, -um: nearest, next, 5  
pugna, -ae f.: fight, 2  
quoque: also, 1  
temptō (1): to attempt; attack; test, probe, 1  
Thermōdon, -dontis m.: Thermodon, 1  
virtūs, -ūtis f.: valor, manhood, excellence, 10

8 persuāsērunt: persuaded (dat) that...;  
governs ind. command (ut); impf. subj.  
9 nuntiāta essent: plpf. subj. translate  
just as plpf. pass. indicative  
10 Proximō diē: on...; abl. of time when  
ēdūxisset: plpf. subj. ēducō  
12 magnō intervallō: at a great interval

## 34. THE BATTLE

Pālus erat nōn magna inter duōs exercitūs; neutrī tamen initium trānseundī facere volēbant. Tandem Herculēs signum dedit, et ubi palūdem trānsiit, proelium commīsit. 1

Amāzonēs impetum virōrum fortissimē sustinuērunt, et contrā opīniōnem omnium tantam virtūtem praestiterunt ut multōs eōrum occīderint, multōs etiam in fugam coniēcerint. Virī enim novō genere pugnae perturbābant nec magnam virtūtem praestabant. Herculēs autem cum haec vidēret, de suīs fortunīs desperāre coepit. Militēs igitur vehementer cohortātus est ut prīstinae virtūtis memoriam retinērent neu tantum dēdecus admitterent, hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinērent; quibus verbīs animōs omnium ita ērēxit ut multī etiam quī vulneribus confectī essent proelium sine morā redintegrārent. 5 10

<b>admittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum:</b> admit, allow, 1	<b>nec:</b> and not, nor, 10
<b>Amāzonēs, -um f.:</b> Amazon, 7	<b>neu:</b> nor, and not, 1
<b>cohortor, -hortārī, -hortātus:</b> encourage, 2	<b>neuter, neutra, neutrum:</b> neither, 1
<b>committō, -mittere, -mīsī:</b> commit, entrust, 6	<b>novus, -a, -um:</b> new, 4
<b>contrā:</b> against (+ acc.), 7	<b>occidō, -ere, -cidī, -cīsus:</b> kill, cut down, 14
<b>dēdecus, dēdecoris n.:</b> dishonor, disgrace, 1	<b>opīniō, -iōnis f.:</b> opinion, reputation, 6
<b>dēspērō (1):</b> to despair, give up, 4	<b>pālus, -i m.:</b> stake, 2
<b>duo, duae, duo:</b> two, 10	<b>perturbō (1):</b> to trouble, greatly disturb, 2
<b>ērigō, -ere, -rēxi, -rectum:</b> raise up, lift, 1	<b>praestō, -stāre, -stītī:</b> stand in front, show, 6
<b>exercitus, -ūs m.:</b> army, 2	<b>prīstinus, -a, -um:</b> former, 1
<b>fortis, -e:</b> strong, brave, valiant, 5	<b>proelium, -ī n.:</b> battle, 4
<b>fortiter:</b> bravely, 2	<b>pugna, -ae f.:</b> fight, 2
<b>fortūna, -ae f.:</b> fortune, chance, luck, 3	<b>redintegrō (1):</b> make whole again, renew, 1
<b>fuga, -ae f.:</b> flight, haste, exile, speed, 6	<b>retineō, -ēre, -ui, -tentum:</b> hold/keep back, 3
<b>genus, -eris n.:</b> birth, race; kind, family, 2	<b>signum, -ī n.:</b> sign, signal, 2
<b>hostis, -is m./f.:</b> stranger, enemy, foe, 5	<b>sustineō, -ēre, ui, -tentum:</b> hold up, endure, 7
<b>impetus, -ūs m.:</b> attack, onset, assault, 9	<b>trānseō, -īre, -iī (īvī), itus:</b> pass (by), 10
<b>initium, -ī n.:</b> beginning, entrance, 1	<b>vehementer:</b> strongly, violently, ardently, 11
<b>inter:</b> between, among (+ acc.), 10	<b>verbum, -ī n.:</b> word, speech, 4
<b>memoria, -ae f.:</b> memory, 4	<b>virtūs, -ūtis f.:</b> valor, manhood, excellence, 10
<b>mīlēs, mīlitis m.:</b> soldier, 2	<b>vulnus, -eris n.:</b> wound, blow, 6
<b>mora, -ae f.:</b> delay, hesitation, hindrance, 14	

1 **neutrī:** *neither*; nom. pl. subj. neuter

2 **trānseundī:** gen. sg. gerund (-ing),  
trāns-eō

3 **trānsiit:** pf. trāns-eō

4 **fortissimē:** superlative adv.  
**sustinērunt:** *held off*

5 **ut...occīderint:** *that...;* pf. subj. in a result  
clause, translate as pf. indicative

6 **novō genere:** *by the new type*

9 **ut...sustinērent:** ind. command

11 **quibus verbīs:** *with these words;* ‘which’

12 **ut...redintegrārent:** *that...;* result clause,  
impf. subj.

**confectī essent:** plpf. pass. subj. in a  
rel. clause of characteristic

### 35. THE DEFEAT OF THE AMAZONS

Diū et acriter pugnātum est; tandem tamen ad sōlis occāsum tanta 1  
commutātiō rērum facta est ut mulierēs terga verterent et fugā  
salūtem peterent. Multae autem vulneribus defessae dum fugiunt  
captae sunt, in quō numerō ipsa erat Hippolytē. Herculēs summam 5  
clementiam praestitit, et postquam balteum accēpit, libertātem  
omnibus captīvīs dedit. Tum vērō sociōs ad mare rēdūxit, et quod  
nōn multum aestātis supererat, in Graeciam proficīscī maturāvit.  
Nāvem igitur cōnscedit, et tempestātem idōneam nactus statim  
solvit; antequam tamen in Graeciam pervēnit, ad urbem Troiam  
nāvem appellere cōstituit, frūmentum enim quod sēcum habēbat 10  
iam dēficere cooperat.

**acriter:** sharply, fiercely, 2  
**aestās, aestātis f.:** summer, 1  
**antequam:** before, 9  
**appellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsī:** drive to, 14  
**balteus, -ēi m.:** belt, girdle, 5  
**captīvus, -a, -um:** prisoner, 2  
**clementia, -ae f.:** mercy, kindness, 1  
**commūtātiō, -tiōnis f.:** change, 2  
**conscendō, -ere, -ndī, -nsum:** climb aboard, 6  
**dēfessus, -a, -um:** wearied, exhausted, 1  
**dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum:** fail, 3  
**diū:** a long time, long, 13  
**frūmentum, -i n.:** grain, 4  
**fuga, -ae f.:** flight, haste, exile, speed, 6  
**fugiō, fugere, fūgī, --:** to flee, hurry away, 9  
**Graecia, -ae f.:** Greece, 7  
**Hippolytē, -ēs f.:** Hippolyte, 4

- 1 **pugnātum est:** *they fought*; ‘it was fought,’ an impersonal passive is often translated in the active in English, supply a subject  
**ad:** near...
- 2 **ut...peterent:** *that...;* result, impf. subj.  
**fugā:** *in flight;* abl. means
- 3 **Multae:** many (*Amazons*)  
**vulneribus:** abl. means

**idōneus, -a, -um:** suitable, appropriate, 12  
**libertās, -tatis f.:** freedom, liberty, 1  
**maturō (1):** to hasten, ripen, 7  
**mulier, mulieris f.:** woman, 3  
**nanciscor, nancisci, nactus:** attain, meet, 7  
**occāsus, -ūs m.:** fall, destruction, 4  
**petō, petere, petīvī, petītum:** seek, aim at, 10  
**praestō, -stāre, -stīti:** stand in front, show, 6  
**pugnō (1):** to fight, 4  
**redūcō, -ere, -xi, -ctus:** lead or bring back, 11  
**sōl, sōlis m.:** sun, 10  
**superō (1):** to overcome, defeat, 3  
**tergum, -ī n.:** back, 8  
**Troia, -ae f.:** Troy, 9  
**vērō:** in truth, in fact, certainly, 5  
**vertō, -ere, vertī, versum:** to turn, 4  
**vulnus, -eris n.:** wound, blow, 6

- 4 **Hippolytē:** Greek 1<sup>st</sup> decl. nominative sg.
- 6 **vērō:** *in fact;* adverb
- 7 **multum aestātis:** *much of the summer;* partitive gen.  
**supererat:** *remained;* impf. supersum  
**proficisci:** dep. inf. proficiscor
- 8 **nactus:** *having obtained;* dep. nanciscor
- 9 **solvit:** *set sail*

## 36. LAOMEDON AND THE SEA-MONSTER

Laōmedon quīdam illō tempore rēgnum Troiae obtinēbat. Ad hunc 1  
Neptūnus et Apollō annō superiōre vēnerant, et cum Troia nōndum  
moenia habēret, ad hoc opus auxilium obtulerant. Postquam tamen  
hōrum auxiliō moenia cōflecta sunt, nōlēbat Lāomedōn praemium  
quod prōposuerat persolvere. 5

Neptūnus igitur et Apollō ob hanc causam īrātī mōnstrum  
quoddam mīserunt speciē horribilī, quod cotīdie ē marī veniēbat et  
hominēs pecudēsque vorābat. Troiānī autem timōre perterritī in  
urbe continēbantur, et pecora omnia ex agrīs intrā murōs  
compulerant. Lāomedōn hīs rēbus commōtus ūrāculum cōnsuluit, 10  
ac deus eī praecēpit ut filiam Hēsiōnen mōnstrō obiceret.

**ac:** and, and also, 14

**ager, -grī m.:** land, field, territory, 11

**Apollo, -inis m.:** Apollo, 7

**compellō, -ere, -puli:** drive together, 3

**consulō, consulere, -lui, -lūm:** to consult, 3

**contineō, -ere, -nuī:** hold or keep together, 4

**cottidie:** daily, 2

**Hēsione, -ēs f.:** Hesione, 1

**horribilis, -e:** horrible, dreadful, 11

**intrā:** within, among (+ acc.), 4

**īrātus, -a, -um:** angry, 5

**Laōmedon, -ontis m.:** Laomedon, 5

**moenia, -ōrum n.:** walls, 2

**mūrus, -ī m.:** (city) wall, rampart, 4

**Neptūnus, -ī m.:** Neptune, 4

**nōlō, nōlle, nōluī:** not...wish, be unwilling 12

**nondum:** not yet, 4

**ob:** on account of (*acc.*), 13

**obiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum:** throw or cast at, 3

**obtineō, -ēre, -ui, -tentum:** hold, maintain, 9

**offerō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum:** offer, present 5

**opus, -eris n.:** work, deed, toil, 9

**ūrāculum, -ī n.:** oracle, 11

**pecus, pecoris n.:** herd, flock, 4

**pecus, pecudis f.:** herd of cattle, 1

**persolvō, -ere, -solvī, -solūtum:** to pay up, 1

**perterreō, -ēre:** frighten, terrify, 5

**praecipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum:** order, take, 6

**praemium, īī n.:** reward, 5

**propōnō, -ere, -sūī, -sitūm:** put or set forth, 4

**superior, -ius:** higher, upper, 3

**Troia, -ae f.:** Troy, 9

**Troiānī, -ōrum m.:** Trojans, 1

**vorō (1):** to devour, 1

3<sup>rd</sup> decl. i-stem abl. adjective

10 **commōtus:** upset; ‘troubled,’ PPP, as often, to move emotionally, not physically

11 **eī praecēpit:** instructed him; ‘ordered’ ut...obiceret: ind. command, impf.

1 **illō tempore:** at...; abl. time when

2 **annō superiōre:** in the previous year  
**cum...habēret:** since...; causal in sense

3 **ad...: for...;** expressing purpose

7 **speciē horribilī:** of...; abl. of quality,

### 37. THE RESCUE OF HESIONE

Laōmedōn, cum hoc respōnsū renūtiātūm esset, magnum dolōrem 1  
 percēpit; sed tamen, ut cīvēs suōs tantō perīculō līberāret, ḍrāculō parēre  
 constituit et diem sacrificiō dīxit. Sed sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum  
 Herculēs tempore opportūnissimō Troiam attigit; ipsō enim temporis  
 pūncō quō puella catēnīs vīncta ad lītus dēducēbātur ille nāvem appulit. 5  
 Herculēs ē nāvī ēgressus dē rēbus quae gerēbantur certior factus est; tum  
 īrā commōtus ad regem sē contulit et auxilium suum obtulit. Cum rēx  
 libenter eī concessisset ut, sī posset, puellam liberāret, Herculēs  
 mōnstrum interfēcit; et puellam, quae iam omnem spem salūtis  
 dēposuerat, incolumem ad patrem redūxit. Lāomedōn magnō cum gaudiō 10  
 filiam suam accēpit, et Herculī prō tantō beneficiō meritam grātiam  
 rettulit.

**appellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsī:** drive to, 14  
**attingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctum:** touch at, reach, 3  
**beneficiūm, -ī n.:** benefit, favor; kindness, 8  
**cāsūs, -ūs m.:** misfortune, accident, event, 8  
**catēna, -ae f.:** chain, 2  
**certus, -a, -um:** fixed, sure, 11  
**civis, -is m/f:** citizen, fellow citizen, 5  
**concedō, -ere;** go away, withdraw, yield, 1  
**dēdūcō, -ere:** lead or bring down, launch, 10  
**dēponō, -ere, -suī, -sītum:** put down or aside  
**gaudium, -ī n.:** gladness, joy, 9  
**grātia, -ae f.:** graditude, favor, thanks, 10  
**incolumis, -e:** inscathed, uninjured, safe, 7  
**īra, īrae f.:** anger, 12  
**Laōmedon, -ontis m.:** Laomedon, 5  
**libenter:** gladly, willingly, 12  
**liberō (1):** to set free, release, 6

**meritus, -a, -um:** deserved, due, just, 4  
**offerō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum:** offer, present 5  
**opportūnus, -a, -um:** suitable, convenient, 2  
**ōrāculum, -ī n.:** oracle, 11  
**pareō, -ēre, paruī:** obey, 3  
**pater, patris, m.:** father, 12  
**percipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum:** feel perceive 5  
**prō:** before, in front of, for, 9  
**puella, -ae f.:** girl, 8  
**punctum, -ī n.:** point, instant, moment, 1  
**redūcō, -ere, -xi, -ctus:** lead or bring back, 11  
**renuntiō, (1):** report, announce, 2  
**respondeō, -ere, -di, -ōnsus:** to answer, 13  
**sīve:** or if, whether if, 6  
**Troia, -ae f.:** Troy, 9  
**vīciō, -īre, vīnxi, vīnctus:** bind, tie, 4

- 1 **cum...renūtiātūm esset:** plpf. pass. subj., translates as a plpf. indicative
- 2 **ut...liberāret:** so that...; purpose  
**tantō perīculō:** from...; abl. of separation with impf. subj. of liberō  
**parēre:** to obey; governs a dat. object
- 3 **diem...dīxit:** appointed the day  
**sacrificiō:** for...; dat. of purpose  
**sīve...sīve:** whether...or  
**cāsū:** by chance; abl. of cause  
**cōsiliō:** by the plan; abl. of cause
- 4 **opportūnissimō:** most opportune; i.e. most timely, abl. time when  
**ipsō pūncō:** at that very point; 'at the point itself,' abl. of time when
- 5 **quō:** at which (time); abl. time when  
**vīncta:** PPP (pf. pass. pple) vinciō

- 6 **ēgressus:** having stepped out; i.e. 'having disembarked' dep. pf.
- 7 **quae gerēbantur:** which were being carried out; the antecedent is rēbus
- 8 **certior factus est:** were made more certain; i.e. 'were informed,' common idiom in Caesar; certior is a pred. adj. in the comparative degree
- 9 **sē contulit:** carried himself; pf. conferō
- 10 **concessisset:** had yielded to him  
**ut...liberāret:** so that he might free...; purpose  
**sī posset:** if he should be able; impf. subj. possum; fut. less vivid condition in secondary sequence
- 11 **prō:** for...; i.g. 'in return for'
- 12 **rettulit:** pf. re-ferō

### 38. 10<sup>th</sup> LABOR: THE OXEN OF GERYON

Tum vērō missus est Herculēs ad īnsulam Erythēam, ut bovēs 1  
Gēryonis arcesseret. Rēs erat summae difficultatis, quod bovēs ā  
quōdam Eurytiōne et ā cane bicipite custodiēbantur. Ipse autem  
Gēryon speciem horribilem praebēbat; tria enim corpora inter sē  
coniuncta habēbat. Herculēs tamen etsī intellegēbat quantum 5  
perīculum esset, negōtium suscēpit; ac postquam per multās terrās  
iter fēcit, ad eam partem Libyaē pervēnit quae Eurōpae proxima  
est. Ibi in utrōque litore fretī quod Eurōpam ā Libyā dīvidit  
columnās cōnstituit, quae posteā Herculis Columnae appellābantur.

ac: and, and also, 14

appellō (1): call (by name), name, 12

arcessō, -ere, -īvī, -itum: summon, invite, 2

biceps, bicipitis: two-headed, 1

canis, -is m. f.: dog, 3

columna, -ae f.: column, pillar, 2

coniungō, -ere, -nxī, -nctum: join together, 2

custodiō, -re, -īvī, -itum: to guard, 4

difficultās, -tatis f.: difficulty, 7

dīvidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsum: divide, separate, 3

Erythīa, -ae f.: Erythia, 1

Eurōpa, -ae f.: Europe, 2

Eurytiōn, -ōnis m.: Eurytion, 2

fretum, ī n.: strait, 1

Gēryon, -ōnis m.: Geryon, 4

horribilis, -e: horrible, dreadful, 11

inter: between, among (+ acc.), 10

Libya, -ae f.: Libya, 3

negōtium, īfī n.: task, business, occupation, 13

posteā: after this, afterwards, 7

praebēō, -ēre, -ūī, -itum: to present, give, 7

proximus, -a, -um: nearest, next, 5

quantus, -a, -um: how much, how great, 4

suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum: undertake, 14

trēs, tria: three, 9

uterque, utraque, utrumque: each (of two) 1

vērō: in truth, in fact, certainly, 5

1 **ut...arcesseret:** so that...might; purpose

6 **esset:** was; ind. question, impf. subj. sum

7 **Eurōpae:** to...; dat. with special adj.

## 39. THE GOLDEN SHIP

Dum hic morātur, Herculēs magnum incommodum ex calōre sōlis 1  
accipiēbat; tandem igitur īrā commōtus arcum suum intendit et  
sōlem sagittīs petiit. Sōl tamen audāciam virī tantum admirātus est  
ut lintrem auream eī dederit. Herculēs hoc dōnum libentissimē  
accēpit, nūllam enim nāvem in hīs regiōnibus invenīre potuerat. 5  
Tum lintrem dēdūxit, et ventum nactus idōneum post breve tempus  
ad īnsulam pervēnit. Ubi ex incolīs cognōvit quō in locō bovēs  
essent, in eam partem statim profectus est et ā rēge Gēryone  
postulāvit ut bovēs sibi trāderentur. Cum tamen ille hoc facere  
nōllet, Hercules et rēgem ipsum et Eurytiōnem, quī erat ingentī 10  
magnitūdine corporis, interfēcit.

admīror, -ārī, ātus sum: admire, wonder at, 1

arcus, -ūs m.: bow, 4

audācia, -ae f.: boldness, audacity, 2

aureus, -a, -um: golden, 13

calor, -ōris m.: heat, 1

dēdūcō, -ere: lead or bring down, launch, 10

Eurytiōn, -ōnis m.: Eurytion, 2

Gēryon, -onis m.: Geryon, 4

idōneus, -a, -um: suitable, appropriate, 12

incola, -ae m.: inhabitant, 7

incommodum, -ī n.: inconvenience, 2

intendō, -ere, -ndī, -ntum: stretch out, aim, 4

inveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum: find, discover 8

1 **morātur**: is lingering; pres. deponent

3 **petiit**: attacked; i.e. ‘chased’ syncopated pf.  
peti(v)it

**Sōl**: the god Sun; here personified

4 **ut...dederit**: pf. subj. in a result clause,  
translate as a pf. indicative; dō, dare  
eī: dat. sg. ind. obj. is, ea, id

**libentissimē**: superlative adverb

6 **nactus**: having attained; pple nanciscor

īra, īrae f.: anger, 12

libenter: gladly, willingly, 12

linter, lintris f.: boat, skiff, 3

māgnitūdō, -tūdinis f.: size, greatness, 13

moror, -ārī, -ātus sum: delay, linger, 3

nanciscor, nanciscī, nactus: attain, meet, 7

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī: not...wish, be unwilling 12

petō, petere, petīvī, petūtum: seek, aim at, 10

postulō (1): demand, claim, request, ask, 11

que: and, 14

sagitta, -ae f.: arrow, 10

sōl, sōlis m.: sun, 10

7 **quō in locō**: in which place; in quō locō

8 **proficiscor**: pf. dep. proficiscor

9 **ut...trāderentur**: that...be handed over;  
impf. pass. in an ind. command

10 **nōllet**: impf. subj. of nōlō (inf. nōlle)  
in a cum-clause

**ingentī magnitūdine**: of...; abl. of quality  
as the predicate of erat

## 40. A MIRACULOUS HAIL-STORM

Tum Herculēs bovēs per Hispāniā et Liguriam compellere 1  
cōnstituit; postquam igitur omnia parāta sunt, bovēs ex īnsulā ad  
continentem transportāvit. Ligurēs autem, gēns bellicōsissima, dum  
ille per fīnēs eōrum iter facit, magnās cōpiās coēgērunt atque eum  
longius progredī prohibēbant. Herculēs magnam difficultātem 5  
habēbat, barbarō enim in locīs superiōribus cōnstiterant et saxa  
telaque in eum coniciēbant. Ille quīdem paene omnem spem salūtis  
dēposuerat, sed tempore opportūnissimō Iuppiter imbrē lapidum  
ingentium ē caelō dēmīsit. Hī tantā vī cecidērunt ut magnum  
numerum Ligurum occiderint; ipse tamen Herculēs (ut in tālibus 10  
rēbus accidere cōnsuēvit) nihil incommōdī cēpit.

**accidō, -ere, accidī:** to happen, fall (on)to, 8

**barbarus, -a, -um:** foreign, savage, 1

**bellicōsus, -a, -um:** warlike, 2

**cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsum:** to fall, 1

**caelum, -ī n.:** sky, 4

**cōgō, cōgere, -ēgī, -āctum:** collect, compel, 5

**compellō, -ere, -pulī:** drive together, 3

**coniciō, -ere, -iēcī:** throw together, throw, take oneself, 13

**consuescō, -ere, -ēvī, -suētum:** to accustom, 3

**contineō, -ēre, -nuī:** hold or keep together, 4

**copia, -ae f.:** abundance, supply; troops, 10

**dēmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum:** to drop, 3

**dēponō, -ere, -suī, -sítum:** put down or aside 9

**difficultās, -tatis f.:** difficulty, 7

**finis, -is m./f.:** end, limit, border, boundary, 12

**gēns, gentis f.:** clan, race, nation, herd, 4

**Hispānia, -ae f.:** Spain, 1

**imber, imbris m.:** rain, 1

**incommōdum, -ī n.:** inconvenience, 2

**Iuppiter, Iovis m.:** Jupiter, 8

**lapis, -idis m.:** stone, 1

**Liguria, -ae f.:** Liguria, 1

**longē:** far, far and wide, 6

**nihil:** nothing, 14

**numerus, -ī m.:** number, multitude, 7

**occidō, -ere, -cidī, -cīsus:** kill, cut down, 14

**opportūnus, -a, -um:** suitable, convenient, 2

**paene:** almost, nearly, 8

**prohibeō, -ēre, -hibuī:** hold back, hinder, 2

**quidem:** indeed, in fact, assuredly, certainly, 8

**superior, -ius:** higher, upper, 3

**tālis, -e:** such, 6

**telum, -ī n.:** weapon, arrow, spear, 3

**transportō (1):** carry over or across, 2

3 **continentem:** *the continent*

4 **fīnēs:** *borders; or ‘territory’*

**cōpiās:** *troops*

**coēgērunt:** pf. cōgō (co-agō) means  
'drive, compel' or, as here, 'gather'

5 **longius:** *farther*, comparative adv.

**progredi:** dep. inf. progredior

6 **barbarō:** *for the...;* dat. of interest

8 **dēposuerat:** *had put aside;* i.e. lost  
**tempore:** *at...;* abl. of time when

**lapidum ingentium:** gen. pl. 3<sup>rd</sup> decl.

9 **Hī:** *these (rocks); supply lapiđēs*

**vī:** irregular abl. sg. vīs

**cecidērunt:** pf. cadō

**ut...occiderint:** *that...;* pf. subj. in a result  
clause, translate as a pf. indicative

10 **ut:** *as...;* ut + ind., translate as 'as' or  
'when'

11 **nihil incommōdī:** *no harm;* 'nothing  
of inconvenience,' partitive gen.

## 41. THE PASSAGE OF THE ALPS

Postquam Ligurēs hōc modō superātī sunt, Herculēs quam celerrimē progressus est et post paucōs diēs ad Alpēs pervenit. Necesse erat hās transīre, ut in Italiam bovēs ageret; rēs tamen summae erat difficultatis. Hī enim montēs, quī ulteriōrem ā citeriōre Galliam dīvidunt, nive perennī sunt tectī; quam ob causam neque frūmentum neque pābulum in hīs regiōnibus invenīrī potest. Herculēs igitur antequam ascendere coepit, magnam cōpiam frūmentī et pābulī comparāvit et hōc commeātū bovēs onerāvit. Postquam in hīs rēbus trēs diēs cōnsumpserat, quartō diē profectus est, et contrā omnium opīniōnem bovēs incolumēs in Italiam trādūxit.

**agō, agere, ēgī, āctum:** drive, lead, spend, 13

**Alpēs, -iūm f.:** Alps, 1

**antequam:** before, 9

**ascendō, -ere, -i, -ēnsus:** ascend, mount, 3

**celer, -eris, -ere:** swift, quick, 12

**citerior, -iūs:** on this side, on the near side, 1

**commeātūs, -ūs m.:** supplies, provisions, 1

**comparō (1):** prepare, collect, 4

**cōsumō, -ere, -mpsī, -mpustum:** take, spend 9

**contrā: against (+ acc.), 7**

**cōpia, -ae f.:** abundance, supply; troops, 10

**difficultas, -tatis f.:** difficulty, 7

**dīvidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsum:** divide, separate, 3

**frūmentum, -ī n.:** grain, 4

**Gallia, -ae f.:** Gaul, 1

**incolumis, -e:** inscathed, uninjured, safe, 7

**inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -vēntum:** find, discover 8

**Italia, -ae f.:** Italy, 2

**Ligurēs, -ūm m.:** Ligurians, 3

**mons, montis m.:** mountain, mount, 5

**necessē: necessary, 2**

**nix, nivis f.:** snow, 1

**ob: on account of (acc.), 13**

**onerō (1):** to load, burden, 2

**opīniō, -iōnis f.:** opinion, reputation, 6

**pabulum, -ī n.:** food, fodder, pasture, 2

**perennis, -e:** perennial, perpetual, 1

**quartus, -a, -um:** one-fourth, 3

**superō (1):** to overcome, defeat, 3

**tectum, -ī n.:** roof, house, 1

**trādūcō, -ere, -xī, -ctum:** lead or bring over, 1

**trānseō, -īre, -ii (ivī), itus:** pass (by), 10

**trēs, tria:** three, 9

**ulterior, -ius:** farther, 3

1 **hōc modō:** in...; abl. manner

**quam celerrimē:** quam + superlative: ‘as X as possible,’ here with a superlative adverb

3 **Necesse erat:** it was necessary

**hās:** i.e. the Alps, Alpēs is fem. pl.

**ageret:** purpose clause, impf. subj. agō

4 **summae difficultatis:** of...; gen. of description as predicate of erat

**ulteriōrem...Galliam:** farther-side Gaul from nearer-side (Gaul); the Alps divided

nearer-side Gaul (northern Italy) from farther-side Gaul (France)

5 **nive perennī:** abl. sg. of nix, nivis sunt tectī: tectī sunt, pf. pass. tegō

**quam ob causam:** for which reason

6 **neque...neque:** neither...nor

**invenīrī:** pass. inf. inveniō

9 **quartō diē:** on...; abl. time when

10 **omnium:** gen. pl. i-stem adj.

**opīniōnem:** expectation; obj. of contrā

## 42. CACUS STEALS THE OXEN

Brevī tempore ad flūmen Tiberim vēnit. Tum tamen nūlla erat urbs 1  
in eō locō, Roma enim nōndum condita erat. Herculēs itinere  
fessus cōnstituit ibi paucōs diēs morārī, ut sē ex labōribus recreāret.  
Haud procul ā valle ubi bovēs pascēbantur spēlunca erat, in quā 5  
Cācus, horribile mōnstrum, tum habitābat. Hic speciem terribilem  
praebēbat, nōn modō quod ingentī magnitūdine corporis erat, sed  
quod ignem ex ore exspirābat. Cācus autem dē adventū Herculis  
fāmam accēperat; noctū igitur vēnit, et dum Herculēs dormit,  
quattuor pulcherrimōrum boūm abripuit. Hōs caudīs in spēluncam  
trāxit, nē Herculēs ē vestigiīs cognoscere posset quō in locō cēlātī 10  
essent.

**abripiō, -ere, -ripū, -reptum:** snatch away 2  
**adventus, -ūs m.:** arrival, approach, 3  
**Cācus, -i m.:** Cacus, 4  
**cauda, -ae f.:** tail, 2  
**cēlō (1):** hide, conceal, 5  
**condō, -ere, condidī, -ditum:** found, store  
away, hide, 2  
**dormiō, -ire, -īvī:** to sleep, 8  
**exspirō (1):** breathe out, 1  
**fāma, -ae f.:** fame, reputation, report, rumor 7  
**fessus, -a, -um:** wearied, exhausted, 2  
**haud:** by no means, not at all, 4  
**horribilis, -e:** horrible, dreadful, 11  
**ignis, ignis, m.:** fire, 9  
**māgnitūdō, -tūdinis f.:** size, greatness, 13  
**moror, -ārī, -ātus sum:** delay, linger, 3

- 1 **Brevī tempore:** abl. time when; 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. i-stem adj.
- 2 **condita erat:** had been established  
itinere: abl. of means, iter
- 3 **paucōs diēs:** for...; acc. duration of time  
**morārī:** to linger; dep. inf.  
**ut...recreāret:** so that...might; purpose

**noctū:** at night, by night, 2  
**nōndum:** not yet, 4  
**ōs, ūris n.:** face, mouth 3  
**pascor, -i, pāstum:** feed, 1  
**praebō, -ere, -ūi, -itum:** to present, give, 7  
**procul:** from afar, from a distance, 5  
**pulcher, -chra, -chrūm:** beautiful, pretty, 2  
**quattuor:** four, 1  
**recreō (1):** to make anew, renew, 1  
**Roma, -ae f.:** Rome, 1  
**terribilis, -e:** terrible, dreadful, 5  
**Tiberis, is m.:** Tiber, 1  
**trahō, -ere, trāxi, tractum:** to draw, drag, 6  
**vallis, -is f.:** valley, vale, 2  
**vestigium, -iū n.:** track, foot-print, 4

- 6 **nōn modō...sed:** not only...but  
**ingentī magnitūdine:** of...; abl. of quality
- 9 **boūm:** of the cattle; partitive gen.
- 10 **nē...posset:** neg. purpose clause, impf.  
subj. possum  
**quo in locō...cēlātī essent:** in quō locō;  
plpf. subj. in ind. question

### 43. HERCULES DISCOVERS THE THEFT

Posterō diē simul atque ē somnō excitātus est, Herculēs furtum 1 animadvertisit et bovēs āmissōs omnibus locīs quaerēbat. Hōs tamen nusquam reperīre poterat, nōn modō quod locī natūram ignorābat, sed quod vestigiīs falsīs deceptus est. Tandem cum magnam partem diēī frustrā cōsumpsisset, cum reliquīs bōbus progredī 5 cōnstituit. At dum proficisci parat, ūnus ē bōbus quōs sēcum habuit mugīre coepit. Subitō eī quī in spēluncā inclusī erant mugitum reddidērunt, et hōc modō Herculem certiōrem fēcerunt quō in locō cēlātī essent. Ille vehementer īrātus ad spēluncam quam celerrimē sē cōntulit, ut praedam reciperet. At Cācus saxum ingens ita 10 dēiēcerat ut adītus spēluncae omnīnō obstruerētur.

- aditus, -ūs m.**: approach, access, entrance, 2
- āmittō, -ere, -misi, -missum**: lose, let go, 8
- animadvertō, -ere**: turn mind to, notice, 6
- Cāucus, -ī m.**: Cacus, 4
- celer, -eris, -ere**: swift, quick, 12
- cēlō (1)**: hide, conceal, 5
- certus, -a, -um**: fixed, sure, 11
- consumō, -ere, -mpsī, -mptum**: take, spend 9
- decipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum**: catch, deceive 1
- dēicio, -ere, -iēci, -iectum**: throw/cast down 2
- excitō (1)**: excite, rouse, incite, 8
- fallō, -ere, fefelli, falsum**: deceive, 3
- frustrā**: in vain, for nothing, 13
- furtum, -ī n.**: theft, 1
- includō, -ere, -ūsī, -ūsum**: close in, shut in, 7
- īrātus, -a, -um**: angry, 5

- 1 **posterō diē**: on...; abl. time when
- simul atque**: as soon as; “as the same time as”
- 2 **āmissōs**: lost; PPP (pf. pass. pple) āmittō
- locīs**: in...; abl. place where
- 3 **nōn modō...sed**: not only...but
- quod**: because
- 5 **diēī**: of the day; partitive gen., 5<sup>th</sup> decl.
- bōbus**: irreg. abl. pl. bōs, bovis
- progredī**: dep. inf. progredior
- 6 **proficisci**: dep. inf. proficiscor
- bōbus**: irreg. abl. pl. bōs, bovis
- 7 **eī quī**: those who...; nom. pl. demonstrative

- mūgiō, -īre, -īvī**: moo, bellow, 2
- natūra, -ae f.**: nature, 9
- nūsquām**: nowhere, 1
- obstruō, -ere, -ūxi, -ūctum**: block, close off 4
- omnīnō**: altogether, wholly, entirely, 11
- posterus, -a, -um**: following, next, 2
- praeda, -ae f.**: plunder, spoils, 2
- recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum**: accept, take back, 8
- reddō, -ere, didī, dditum**: give back, return, 4
- reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertum**: find out, 9
- simul**: at the same time; at once, together, 10
- somnus, -ī m.**: sleep, 14
- vehementer**: strongly, violently, ardently, 11
- vestigium, -ī n.**: track, foot-print, 4

- 8 **hōc modō**: in...; abl. of manner
- certiōrem fēcerunt**: made...more certain; i.e. ‘informed,’ a double acc., comparative adj. is an acc. predicate
- quō in locō cēlātī essent**: in quō locō; plpf. pass. subj., ind. question
- 9 **quam celerrimē**: quam + superlative: ‘as X as possible,’ here a superlative adverb
- 10 **sē contulit**: carried himself; pf conferō
- ut...reciperet**: so that...might; purpose
- 11 **ut...obstruerētur**: purpose
- posset**: impf. subj. possum (inf. posse)

## 44. HERCULES AND CACUS

Herculēs cum nūllum alium introitum reperiō posset, hoc saxum 1  
āmovēre cōnātus est, sed propter eius magnitūdinem rēs erat  
difficillima. Diū frustrā laborābat neque quicquam efficere poterat;  
tandem tamen magnō cōnātū saxum āmovit et speluncam patefēcit.  
Ibi āmissōs bovēs magnō cum gaudiō conspēxit; sed Cācum ipsum 5  
vix cernere potuit, quod spēlunca replēta erat fūmō quem ille mōre  
suō ēvomēbat. Herculēs inūsitatā specie turbātus breve tempus  
haesitābat; mox tamen in spēluncam irrūpit et collum mōnstrī  
bracchiīs complexus est. Ille etsī multum repugnāvit, nūllō modō  
sē liberāre potuit, et cum nūlla facultās respīrandī darētur, mox 10  
exanimātus est.

**alius, -a, -ud:** other, another, else, 9

**āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum:** lose, let go, 8

**āmoveō, -ere, -mōvī, -mōtum:** move away, 5

**bracchium, -ī n.:** arm, 2

**Cācus, -ī m.:** Cacus, 4

**cernō, -ere, crēvī, crētus:** discern, decide, 1

**collum, -ī n.:** neck, 6

**complector, -plectī, -plexus sum:** embrace, 3

**cōnātus, -ūs m.:** attempt, effort, 7

**conspiciō, -ere, -ēxī, -ectum:** catch sight of, 3

**difficilis, -e:** hard, difficult, troublesome, 6

**diū:** a long time, long, 13

**efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus:** make, form, 3

**etsī:** even if, although, though, 13

**ēvomō, -ere, -uī, -vomitum:** vomit forth, 1

**examīnō (1):** to kill, exhaust, 9

**facultās, -tatis f.:** ability, opportunity, 5

**frustrā:** in vain, for nothing, 13

**fūmus, -ī m.:** smoke, 2

2 **cōnātus est:** pf. deponent, translate in act.

3 **difficillima:** superlative, stems ending  
in r and l duplicate instead of -issimus

**quicquam:** quidquam, acc. direct obj.

4 **magnō cōnātū:** with...; abl. manner

**gaudium, -ī n.:** gladness, joy, 9

**haereō, -ere, haesi:** stick, hesitate, linger, 3

**inrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum:** burst in, 2

**introitus, -ūs m.:** entrance, 6

**inūsitatās, -a, -um:** unusual, 1

**labōrō (1):** work, toil, labor, strive, 2

**liberō (1):** to set free, release, 6

**māgnitūdō, -tūdinis f.:** size, greatness, 13

**mōs, mōris m.:** custom, manner, law, 6

**patefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum:** to lay open, 2

**propter:** on account of, because of, 6

**quisquam, quidquam:** anyone, anything, 4

**reperiō, -ire, repperī, repertum:** find out, 9

**repleō, -ere, -plēvī, -plētum:** fill again, fill, 4

**repugnō (1):** fight against, oppose, resist, 2

**respīrō (1):** to breathe back, breathe out, 2

**turbō (1):** to confuse, disturb, 2

**vix:** with difficulty, with effort, scarcely, 5

5 **āmissōs:** see line 3

6 **mōre suō:** by its custom; ‘from its custom’

9 **multum:** much; adverbial acc.

10 **respīrandī:** gen. gerund (-ing)

## 45. 11<sup>th</sup> LABOR: GOLDEN APPLES OF THE HESPERIDES

Eurystheus postquam bovēs Gēryonis accēpit, labōrem ūndecimum 1  
 Herculī impōsuit, graviōrem quam quōs suprā narrāvimus. Mandāvit  
 enim eī ut aurea pōma ex hortō Hesperidum auferret. Hesperidēs autem  
 nymphae erant quaedam formā praestantissimā, quae in terrā longinquā  
 habitābant, et quibus aurea quaedam pōma ā Iunōne commissa erant. 5  
 Multī hominēs, aurī cupiditāte inductī, haec pōma auferre iam anteā  
 cōnātī erant. Rēs tamen difficillima erat, namque hortus in quō pōma  
 erant murō ingentī undique circumdātus erat; praetereā dracō quīdam cui  
 centum erant capita portam hortī diligenter custodiēbat. Opus igitur quod  
 Eurystheus Herculī imperāverat erat summae difficultatis, nōn modō ob 10  
 causās quās memorāvimus, sed etiam quod Herculēs omnīnō ignorābat  
 quō in locō hortus ille situs esset.

**antea:** before, earlier, formerly, previously, 7  
**auferō, -ferre, abstulī, -lātum:** carry away 11

**aureus, -a, -um:** golden, 13

**aurum, -ī n.:** gold, 3

**centum:** hundred, 3

**circumdō, -are, -dedī, -datus:** to surround, 1

**committō, -mittere, -mīsī:** commit, entrust, 6

**cōnor, cōnārtī, cōnātūs sum:** to try, attempt, 7

**cupiditās, -tātis f.:** desire, passion, 5

**custodiō, -ire, -īvī, -ītum:** to guard, 4

**difficilis, -e:** hard, difficult, troublesome, 6

**difficultās, -tātis f.:** difficulty, 7

**diligenter:** carefully, diligently, 3

**dracō, -ōnis m.:** dragon, serpent, 7

**forma, -ae, f.:** beauty, shape, form, 3

**Gēryon, -onis m.:** Geryon, 4

**Hesperidēs, -um f.:** Hesperides, 5

**hortus, -ī m.:** garden, 7

**ignōrō (1):** not know, be ignorant, 5

**imperō (1):** order, command, 12

**imponō, -ere, -posuī, -positus:** place on, 7

2 **graviōrem:** comparative adj.

**quam (labōrēs) quōs:** than (the labors)  
 which...; supply labōrēs

**suprā:** above; i.e. in previous discussion

**mandāvit:** ordered; else “entrusted”

3 **eī:** dat. ind. object

**ut...auferret:** that...; impf. subj. au-ferō  
 (irreg. inf. ferre), ind. command

4 **formā praestantissimā:** of...; abl. of

quality as the predicate of erant

**praestantissimā:** most outstanding

5 **quibus:** to whom; dat. ind. object

**indūcō, -ere, -xi, -ctum:** induce, lead in, 2

**Iūnō, -ōnis m.:** Juno, 3

**longinquus, -a, -um:** distant, remote, far off, 1

**mandō (1):** to entrust, give, commit, 2

**memorō (1):** to recall, mention, 1

**mūrus, -ī m.:** wall, rampart, 4

**namque:** for, 2

**narrō (1):** to narrate, relate, 7

**nymphā, -ae f.:** nymph, 2

**ob:** on account of (acc.), 13

**omnīnō:** altogether, wholly, entirely, 11

**opus, -eris n.:** work, deed, toil, 9

**pōmūm, -ī n.:** fruit, apple, 9

**porta, -ae f.:** gate, 7

**praestō, -stāre, -stītī:** stand in front, show, 6

**praetereā:** besides, moreover, 3

**situs, -a, -um:** situated, place, 2

**suprā:** above, before, 6

**undecimum:** eleven, 1

**undique:** from everywhere, from all sides, 7

6 **aurī:** for gold; object genitive

**inductī:** drawn; PPP indūcō

**auferre:** inf. auferō

8 **ingentī:** i-stem 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. abl. with murō

**cui...erant:** to whom there were; i.e. ‘who had,’ or ‘whose...were,’ dat. of possession

10 **summae difficultatis:** of...; gen. of

description as a predicate of erant

**nōn modō...sed etiam:** not only...but also

12 **quō in locō:** in quō locō

**esset:** impf. subj., ind. question

## 46. HERCULES ASKS AID OF ATLAS

Herculēs, quamquam quiētem vehementer cupiēbat, tamen 1  
Eurystheō parēre cōstituit, et simul ac iussa eius accēpit,  
proficisci matūrāvit. Ā multīs mercātoribus quaesīverat quō in locō  
Hesperidēs habitārent, nihil tamen certum reperīre potuerat. Frustrā  
per multās terrās iter fēcit et multa perīcula subiit; tandem, cum in 5  
hīs itineribus tōtum annum cōnsumpsisset, ad extrēmam partem  
orbis terrārum, quae proxima est Ōceanō, pervēnit. Hic stābat vir  
quīdam, nōmine Atlas, ingentī magnitūdine corporis, quī caelum  
(ita trāditum est) umerīs suīs sustinēbat, nē in terram dēcideret.  
Herculēs tantās vīrēs magnopere mirātus statim in colloquium cum 10  
Atlante vēnit, et cum causam itineris docuisset, auxilium ab eō  
petiit.

ac: and, and also, 14

Atlas, -antis m.: Atlas, 8

caelum, -ī n.: sky, 4

certus, -a, -um: fixed, sure, 11

conloquium, -ī n.: conversation, 1

consumō, -ere, -mpsī, -mptum: take, spend 9

cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum: desire, long for, 4

dēcidō, -ere, -cidi: to fall down, 1

doceō, -ere, -ui, -ctus: teach, tell, 9

extrēmus, -a, -um: outermost, farthest, last, 2

frustrā: in vain, for nothing, 13

Hesperidēs, -um f.: Hesperides, 5

māgnitūdō, -tūdinis f.: size, greatness, 13

maturō (1): to hasten, ripen, 7

mercātor, -ōris m.: trader, merchant, 3

mīror, -ārī, -ātus: to wonder, be amazed at, 7

nihil: nothing, 14

nōmen, nōminis, n.: name, 12

Ōceanus, -ī m.: Oceanus, 1

orbis, -is m.: sphere; + terrārum, world, 1

pareō, -ēre, paruī: obey, 3

petō, petere, petīvī, petītum: seek, aim at, 10

proximus, -a, -um: nearest, next, 5

quamquam: although, 4

quiēs, quiētis f.: rest, repose, sleep, 5

reperiō, -īre, reperi, repertum: find out, 9

simul: at the same time; at once, together, 10

stō (1): to stand, 8

subeō, -īre, -ī: to undergo, go up (to), 5

sustineō, -ēre, uī, -tentum: hold up, endure, 7

umerus, -ī m.: shoulder, 3

vehementer: strongly, violently, ardently, 11

2 parēre to obey; governs a dat. obj.

simul ac: as soon as

7 orbis terrārum: of the world; ‘sphere of lands’ a very common phrase for ‘earth’

8 nōmine: by name; abl. of respect

ingentī magnitūdine: of...; abl. of quality

9 ita trāditum est: so it has been reported

nē...dēcideret: neg. purpose clause

10 vīrēs: acc. pl. vīs

mirātus: having marveled at; dep. PPP

11 docuisset: plpf. subj. cum-clause

## 47. HERCULES BEARS UP THE HEAVENS

Atlās autem Herculī maximē prōdesse potuit; ille enim cum ipse 1  
esset pater Hesperidum, certō scīvit quō in locō esset hortus.  
Postquam igitur audīvit quam ob causam Herculēs vēnisset, "Ipse,"  
inquit, "ad hortum ībō et filiābus meīs persuadēbō ut pōma suā  
sponte trādant." Herculēs cum haec audīret, magnopere gāvīsus est; 5  
vim enim adhibere nōluit, sī rēs aliter fierī posset. Cōnstituit igitur  
oblātum auxilium accipere. Atlās tamen postulāvit ut, dum ipse  
abesset, Herculēs caelum umerīs sustinēret. Hoc autem negōtium  
Hercules libenter suscēpit, et quamquam rēs erat summī labōris,  
totum pondus caelī continuōs complurēs diēs solus sustinēbat. 10

**absum, -esse, āfuī:** to be away, be absent, 7  
**adhibeō, -ēre, -ūī, -itum:** to apply, hold to, 4  
**aliter:** otherwise, in another way, 3

**Atlās, -antis m.:** Atlas, 8

**caelum, -ī n.:** sky, 4

**certus, -a, -um:** fixed, sure, 11

**complurēs, -plūra:** several, many, 1

**continuus, -a, -um:** continuous, successive, 2

**eō, īre, īī (īvī), itūrus:** go, 3

**gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum:** enjoy, rejoice, 4

**Hesperidēs, -um f.:** Hesperides, 5

**hortus, -ī m.:** garden, 7

**inquam, inquis, inquit:** to say, 6

**libenter:** gladly, willingly, 12

**maximē:** especially, very greatly, 5

1 **prōdesse:** inf. prōsum, governs a dat. obj.  
**cum...esset:** since...; causal in sense, impf. subj.

2 **certō:** for sure, in fact; adverb

**quō in locō:** in quō locō

**esset:** impf. subj. sum, ind. question

3 **quam ob causam:** for what reason

**vēnisset:** plpf. subj., ind. question

4 **ībō:** 1<sup>st</sup> sg. fut. eō, īre

**filiābus:** irreg. dat. pl. obj. ind. obj.

**ut...trādant:** ind. command governed by  
persuadēbō; pres. subj. trādō

**negōtium, īī n.:** task, business, occupation, 13

**nōlō, nōlle, nōluī:** not...wish, be unwilling 12

**ob:** on account of (acc.), 13

**offerō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum:** offer, present 5

**pater, patris, m.:** father, 12

**persuadeō, -ēre, -suāstī, -suāsum:** persuade, 9

**pōmum, -ī n.:** fruit, apple, 9

**postulō (1):** demand, claim, request, ask, 11

**prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī:** profit, benefit, 6

**quamquam:** although, 4

**sponte:** of one's own will, voluntarily, 2

**suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum:** undertake, 14

**sustineō, -ēre, uī, -tentum:** hold up, endure, 7

**umerus, -ī m.:** shoulder, 3

**suā sponte:** by their own will

5 **gāvīsus est:** rejoiced; pf. dep.; gaudeō is  
semi-deponent (deponent in pf. tenses)

6 **vim:** acc. sg. vīs

**fierī:** to be done; inf. fiō which can be  
employed as the passive of faciō

7 **oblātum:** offered; PPP of-ferō

**ut...sustinēret:** ind. command

8 **abesset:** impf. subj. ab-sum

9 **summī labōris:** of...; gen. of description

10 **continuōs...diēs:** for...; acc. of duration

## 48. THE RETURN OF ATLAS

Atlās intereā abierat et ad hortum Hesperidum, quī pauca milia 1  
 passuum aberat, sē quam celerrimē contulerat. Eō cum vēnisset,  
 causam veniendī expōsuit et filiās suās vehementer hortātus est ut  
 pōma trāderent. Illae diū haerēbant; nōlēbant enim hoc facere,  
 quod ab ipsā Iunone (ita ut ante dictum est) hoc mūnus accēpissent. 5  
 Atlās tamen aliquando eīs persuāsit ut sibi parērent, et pōma ad  
 Herculem rettulit. Herculēs intereā cum plūrēs diēs exspectāvisset  
 neque ūllam fāmam dē reditū Atlantis accēpisset, hāc morā graviter  
 commōtus est. Tandem quintō diē Atlantem vīdit redeuntem, et  
 mox magnō cum gaudiō pōma accēpit; tum, postquam grātiās prō 10  
 tantō beneficiō ēgit, ad Graeciam proficiscī maturāvit.

- abeō, -tre, -ii, -itus:** go away, go off, depart, 6  
**absum, -esse, afui:** to be away, be absent, 7  
**aliquandō:** sometimes, at some time, 1  
**ante:** before, in front of (acc.); adv. before, 5  
**Atlās, -antis m.:** Atlas, 8  
**beneficiūm, -i n.:** benefit, favor; kindness, 8  
**celer, -eris, -ere:** swift, quick, 12  
**expōnō, -ere, -suī, -sūtum:** set out, explain 7  
**fāma, -ae f.:** fame, reputation, report, rumor 7  
**gaudium, -ii n.:** gladness, joy, 9  
**Graecia, -ae f.:** Greece, 7  
**grātiā, -ae f.:** gratitude, favor, thanks, 10  
**haereō, -ere, haesi, haesūrum:** stick, cling, 3  
**Hesperidēs, -um f.:** Hesperides, 5  
**hortor, -āri, -ātus sum:** to encourage, urge, 4  
**hortus, -i m.:** garden, 7  
**intereā:** meanwhile, 7

- 1 **abierat:** impf. ab-eō  
**milia passūm:** miles; ‘thousands of paces;’ acc. of extent of space  
 2 **sē contulerat:** had carried himself; i.e. ‘had gone’  
**quam celerrimē:** quam + superlative often is translated “as X as possible;”  
**Eō:** to there; ibi is ‘there;’ inde (ibi + de) is ‘from there;’ and eō ‘to there’  
 3 **veniendī:** gen. sg. gerund (-ing)  
**ut:** that.; ind. command after dep. hortor

- Iūnō, -ōnis m.:** Juno, 3  
**maturō (1):** to hasten, ripen, 7  
**mille (pl. miliā):** thousand, 7  
**mora, -ae f.:** delay, hesitation, hindrance, 14  
**mūnus, mūneris n.:** service, gift, duty, 1  
**nōlō, nōlle, nōluī:** not...wish, be unwilling 12  
**pareō, -ere, paruī:** obey, 3  
**passus, -ūs:** pace, 7  
**persuādeō, -ere, -suāsī, -suāsum:** persuade, 9  
**plūs, plūris:** more, many, 1  
**pōnum, -i n.:** fruit, apple, 9  
**prō:** before, in front of, for, 9  
**quintus, -a, -um:** fifth, 1  
**reditus, -ūs m.:** return, 5  
**ūllus, -a, -um:** any, 3  
**vehementer:** strongly, violently, ardently, 11

- 5 **quod...accēpissent:** because...had received; plpf. subj. of alleged cause  
**ita ut:** thus as...; ut + indicative is ‘as’  
 7 **rettulit:** pf. re-ferō  
**plūrēs diēs:** for...; acc. duration of time  
 9 **quintō diē:** on...; abl. time when  
**redeuntem:** acc. pred. pple. red-eō  
 10 **grātiās...ēgit:** gave thanks; common idiom, grātiās agō in the pf.  
**prō:** (in return) for  
 11 **proficisci:** pres. dep. inf.

## 49. 12<sup>th</sup> LABOR: CERBERUS THE THREE-HEADED DOG

Postquam aurea pōma ad Eurystheum relāta sunt, ūnus modō 1  
 relinquēbātur ē duodecim labōribus quōs Pythia Herculī  
 praecēperat. Eurystheus autem cum Herculem magnopere timēret,  
 eum in aliquem locum mittere volēbat unde numquam redīre  
 posset. Negōtium igitur eī dedit ut canem Cerberum ex Orcō in 5  
 lūcem trāheret. Hoc opus omnium difficilimum erat, nēmō enim  
 umquam ex Orcō redierat. Praetereā Cerberus iste mōnstrum erat  
 horribilī speciē, cui tria erant capita serpentibus saevīs cīncta.  
 Antequam tamen dē hōc labore narrāmus, non aliēnum vidētur,  
 quoniam dē Orcō mentiōnem fēcimus, pauca dē eā regiōne 10  
 prōpōnere.

**alienus, -a, -um:** of another, foreign, 1

**aliquī, -qua, -quod:** some, any, definite, 3

**antequam:** before, 9

**aureus, -a, -um:** golden, 13

**canis, -is m. f.:** dog, 3

**Cerberus, -ī m.:** Cerberus, 6

**cīngō, -ere, cīnxī, cīncutum:** surround, gird, 1.

**difficilis, -e:** hard, difficult, troublesome, 6

**duodecim:** twelve, 6

**horribilis, -e:** horrible, dreadful, 11

**iste, ista, istud:** that or those (of yours), 7

**lūx, lūcis m.:** light, 6

**mentiō, -tiōnis f.:** mention, 2

**narrō (1):** to narrate, relate, 7

**negōtium, iī n.:** task, business, occupation, 13

**nēmō, nūllius, nēminī, nēminem,**

**nullō/nūlla:** no one, 6

**numquam:** never, at no time, 4

**opus, -eris n.:** work, deed, toil, 9

**Orcus, -ī m.:** Orcus, underworld, 11

**pōmum, -ī n.:** fruit, apple, 9

**praecipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum:** order, take, 6

**praetereā:** besides, moreover, 3

**propōnō, -ere, -sui, -situm:** put or set forth, 4

**Pŷthia, -ae f.:** Pythia, 4

**quotiam:** since now, seeing that, 1

**relinquō, -ere, -liquī, -lictum:** leave behind, 9

**saevus, -a, -um:** savage, fierce, 3

**serpēns, serpentis f.:** serpent, 6

**timeō, -ēre, -ui:** fear, dread, 6

**trēs, tria:** three, 9

**umquam:** ever, 5

**unde:** whence, from which source, 6

1 **modō:** *just; or ‘only;’* an adverb which is often confused with the noun *modus*, -ī

2 **Herculī:** dat. ind. obj.

3 **cum:** *since...;* causal in sense + impf. subj.

4 **unde...posset:** *from where...;* impf. subj. in a rel. clause of characteristic

5 **negōtium...ut:** *task, (namely) that...;* an indirect command in apposition

6 **omnium:** partitive gen. i-stem adj. with the following superlative *difficilimum*

7 **redierat:** plpf. red-eō

**iste:** *that; commonly ‘that...of yours,’* is an alternative for *ille* that often expresses contempt

8 **horribili speciē:** *of...;* abl. quality

**cui...erant:** *to whom there were...;* ‘who had,’ dat. of possession

9 **vidētur:** *it seems; ‘is seen,’* the subject is the inf. *prōpōnere* below; *aliēnum* is a predicate nominative

## 50. CHARON'S FERRY

Dē Orcō, quī īdem Hādēs appellābātur, haec trāduntur. Ut quisque 1  
dē vītā dēcesserat, mānēs eius ad Orcum, sēdem mortuōrum, ā deō  
Mercurio dēdūcēbantur. Huius regiōnis, quae sub terrā fuisse  
dīcitur, rēx erat Plūtō, cui uxor erat Prōserpina, Iovis et Cereris  
filia. Mānēs igitur ā Mercuriō dēductī prīmum ad rīpam veniēbant 5  
Stygis flūminis, quō rēgnum Plūtōnis continētur. Hoc transīre  
necesse erat antequam in Orcum venīre possent. Cum tamen in hōc  
flūmine nūllus pōns factus esset, mānēs trānsvehēbantur ā  
Charonte quōdam, quī cum parvā scaphā ad rīpam exspectābat.  
Charōn prō hōc officiō mercēdem postulābat, neque quemquam, 10  
nisi hoc praemium prius dedisset, trānsvehere volēbat. Quam ob  
causam mōs erat apud antiquōs nūmmum in ore mortuī pōnere eō  
cōnsiliō, ut, cum ad Stygem vēnisset, pretium trāiectus solvere  
posset. Eī autem quī post mortem in terrā nōn sepultī erant Stygem  
trānsīre nōn potuērunt, sed in rīpā per centum annōs errāre coāctī 15  
sunt; tum dēmum Orcum intrāre licēbat.

**antequam:** before, 9

**antiquus, -a, -um:** ancient, 3

**appellō (1):** call (by name), name, 12

**apud:** among, in the presence of (+ acc.), 9

**centum:** hundred, 3

**Cerēs, Cereris f.:** Ceres, 1

**Charōn, -ontis m.:** Charon, 5

**cōgō, cōgere, -ēgī, -āctūm:** collect, compel, 5

**contineō, -ēre, -nuī:** hold or keep together, 4

**dēcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum:** depart; die, 2

**dēdūcō, -ere:** lead or bring down, launch, 10

**dēmum:** at length, finally, 3

**Hādēs, -ae m.:** Hades, 1

**intrō (1):** go into, enter, 7

**Iuppiter, Iovis m.:** Jupiter, 8

**licet, -ēre, -uit:** is allowed, permitted, 5

**mānēs, -ium m.:** spirit, shade, 4

**mercēdis f.:** pay, wages, 1

**Mercurius, -ī m.:** Mercury, 8

**morior, morī, mortuus sum:** to die, 4

**mors, mortis, f.:** death, 9

**mortuus, -a, -um:** dead, 7

**mōs, mōris m.:** custom, manner, law, 6

**necesse:** necessary, 2

**nisi:** if not, unless, 2

**nummus, -ī m.:** coin; cash, 1

**ob:** on account of (*acc.*), 13

**officium, -ī, n.:** duty, 2

**Orcus, -ī m.:** Orcus, underworld, 11

**ōs, ūris n.:** face, mouth 3

**parvus, -a, -um:** small, 3

**Plūtō, Plūtōnis m.:** Pluto, 6

**ponō, ponere, posuī, positum:** to place, put, 5

**pōns, pontis m.:** bridge, 2

**postulō (1):** demand, claim, request, ask, 11

**praemium, īī n.:** reward, 5

**pretium, īī n.:** price, charge, 1

**prius:** before, 3

**prō:** before, in front of, for, 9

**Proserpina, -ae f.:** Proserpina, 2

**quisquam, quidquam:** anyone, anything, 4

**quisque, quidque:** each one, each person, 3

**rīpa, -ae f.:** bank, shore, 7

**scapha, -ae f.:** boat, skiff, 4

**sēdes, sēdis f.:** seat; abode, home, 5

**sepeliō, -ire, -īvī, sepultum:** to bury, 1

**Styx, Stygis f.:** Styx, 6

**sub:** under, 4

**trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractum:** to draw, drag, 6

**trāiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum:** pierce, throw, 2

**trānseō, -īre, -ī (īvī), itus:** pass (by), 10

**trānsvehō, -ere, -vexī:** to carry across, 2

**uxor, ūxoris f.:** wife, spouse, 10

**vīta, -ae, f.:** life, 9

## 50. CHARON'S FERRY

- 1 **trāduntur**: *are reported*; pres. pass.  
Ut: *when...*; as often with indicative
- 3 **Huius regiōnis**: gen. sg. with rex
- 4 **cui**: *whose*; dat. of possession
- 6 **quō**: *by which*; abl. of means
- 7 **necessē erat**: *it was necessary*; impersonal  
**possent**: *were able*; subj. of ideal limit
- 9 **ad**: *near, at*
- 10 **prō**: *(in return) for*
- 11 **nisi...dedit**: *if he had not given*;  
protasis in a simple past condition,
- originally pf. ind., made plpf. subj.  
**volēbat**: *was (Charon) willing...*  
**quam ob causam**: *for which reason*
- 12 **mōs erat**: *it was the custom...to*  
**eō cōsiliō, ut...**: *with this purpose  
(namely) that...*; purpose clause
- 13 **trāiectus**: *(when) sent across*; PPP
- 14 **Eī...qui**: *those who*
- 16 **licēbat**: *it would be allowed*; iterative  
or customary impf.

## 51. THE REALM OF PLUTO

Ut autem mānēs Stygem hōc modō trānsierant, ad alterum 1  
veniēbant flūmen, quod Lēthē appellābātur. Ex hōc flūmine aquam  
bibere cogēbantur; quod cum fēcissent, rēs omnēs in vītā gestās ē  
memoriā dēponēbant. Denique ad sedem ipsīus Plūtōnis veniēbant,  
cuius introitus ā cane Cerberō custōdiēbatur. Ibi Plūtō nigrō vestītū 5  
indūtus cum uxōre Proserpinā in soliō sēdēbat. Stābant etiam nōn  
procul ab eō locō tria alia sōlia, in quibus sēdēbant Mīnōs,  
Rhadamanthus, Aeacusque, iūdicēs apud īferōs. Hī mortuīs iūs  
dicēbant et praemia poenāsque cōnstituēbant. Bonī enim in 10  
Campōs Elysiōs, sēdem beātōrum, veniēbant; improbī autem in  
Tartarum mittēbantur ac multīs et variīs suppliciīs ibi  
excruciābantur.

ac: and, and also, 14

Aeacus, -ī m.: Aeacus, 1

alius, -a, -ud: other, another, else, 9

alter, -era, -erūm: other (of two), second, 7

appellō (1): call (by name), name, 12

apud: among, in the presence of (+ acc.), 9

aqua, -ae f.: water, 11

beatus, -a, -um: blessed, happy, 3

bibō, -ere, bibī: drink, 4

campus, -ī m.: plain, field, 1

canis, -is m. f.: dog, 3

Cerberus, -ī m.: Cerberus, 6

cōgō, cōgere, -ēgī, -āctūm: collect, compel, 5

custodiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītūm: to guard, 4

denique: lastly, finally, 1

dēponō, -ere, -suī, -sītūm: put down or aside9

Elysius, -a, -um: Elysian, 1

excruciō (1): torture, 1

improbus, -a, -um: wicked, 1

induō, -ere, induī, indūtūm: put on, 8

īferī, -ōrum m.: the dead, the shades, 1

introitus, -ūs m.: entrance, 6

iūdex, iūdicis m.: judge, 1

iūs, iūris n.: justice, law, right, 4

Lēthē, -ēs f.: Lethe (river), 1

mānēs, -īum m.: spirit, shade, 4

Mīnōs, Mīnōis m.: Minos, 1

mortuus, -a, -um: dead, 7

niger, nigra, nigrum: black, 1

Plūtō, Plūtōnis m.: Pluto, 6

poena, poenae, f.: punishment, 3

praemium, iī n.: reward, 5

procul: from afar, from a distance, 5

Proserpina, -ae f.: Proserpina, 2

Rhadamanthus, -ī m.: Rhadamanthus, 1

sēdes, sēdis f.: seat; abode, home, 5

soliū, -ī n.: throne, seat, 2

stō (1): to stand, 8

Styx, Stygis f.: Styx, 6

supplicium, -īn: punishment, supplication, 5

Tartarus, -ī m.: Tartarus, 1

trānseō, -īre, -īī (īvī), itūs: pass (by), 10

trēs, tria: three, 9

uxor, ūxōris f.: wife, spouse, 10

varius, -a, -um: various, 2

vestītus, -ūs m.: clothing, 1

vīta, -ae, f.: life, 9

1 Ut: When...; ut + indicative, transeō

3 rēs...gestās: all matters carried out...

5 cuius: of which; gen. quī, quae, quod

6 stābant: subj. is neuter pl. tria sōlia

8 iūs dicēbant: dispensed justice

10 Campōs Elysiōs: Elysian Fields

## 52. HERCULES CROSSES THE STYX

Herculēs postquam imperia Eurystheī accēpit, in Lacōniam ad 1  
 Taenarum statim sē contulit; ibi enim spēlunca erat ingentī  
 magnitūdine, per quam, ut trādēbātur, hominēs ad Orcum  
 dēscendēbant. Eō cum vēnisset, ex incolīs quaesīvit quō in locō  
 spēlunca illa sita esset; quod cum cognōvisset, sine morā 5  
 dēscendere cōstituit. Nec tamen sōlus hoc iter faciēbat, Mercūrius  
 enim et Minerva sē eī sociōs adiunixerant. Ubi ad rīpam Stygis  
 vēnit, Herculēs scapham Charontis cōnscedit, ut ad ulteriōrem  
 rīpam trānsīret. Cum tamen Herculēs vir esset ingentī magnitūdine  
 corporis, Charōn solvere nōlēbat; magnopere enim verēbātur nē 10  
 scapha sua tantō pondere onerāta in mediō flūmine mergerētur.  
 Tandem tamen, minīs Herculīs territus, Charōn scapham solvit, et  
 eum incolumem ad ulteriōrem rīpam perdūxit.

**adiungō, -ere, -iunxī, -iunctum:** join to, 2

**Charōn, -ontis m.:** Charon, 5

**conscendō, -ere, -ndī, -nsum:** climb aboard, 6

**dēscendō, -ere, -ndī, -nsum:** descend, 4

**imperium, -ī n.:** power to command, rule, 2

**incola, -ae m.:** inhabitant, 7

**incolumis, -e:** inviolated, uninjured, safe, 7

**Lacōnia, -ae f.:** Laconia, Sparta, 1

**māgnitūdō, -tūdinis f.:** size, greatness, 13

**medius, -a, -um:** middle of, 10

**Mercurius, -ī m.:** Mercury, 8

**mergō, mergere, mersī, mersum:** to sink, 3

**mina, -ārum f.:** threads, 1

**Minerva, -ae f.:** Minerva, 4

**mora, -ae f.:** delay, hesitation, hindrance, 14

**nec:** and not, nor, 10

**nōlō, nōlle, nōluī:** not...wish, be unwilling 12

**onerō (1):** to load, burden, 2

**Orcus, -ī m.:** Orcus, underworld, 11

**perdūcō, -ere, -xī, -ctum:** lead through, 4

**pondus, ponderis n.:** weight, 2

**rīpa, -ae f.:** bank, shore, 7

**scapha, -ae f.:** boat, skiff, 4

**situs, -a, -um:** situated, place, 2

**sōlus, -a, -um:** alone, only, lone, sole, 6

**Styx, Stygis f.:** Styx, 6

**Taenarus, -ī m.:** Taenarus, 1

**terreō, -ēre, -uī, territum:** to terrify, scare, 5

**trānseō, -īre, -ī (īvī), itus:** pass (by), 10

**ūterior, -iūs:** farther, 3

**vereor, -ērī, -itus:** be afraid, fear; revere, 5

2 **sē contulit:** carried themselves; i.e.

“brought himself,” pf. conferō

**ingentī magnitūdine:** of...; abl. of quality;  
 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. i-stem abl.

3 **ut:** as...; ut + indicative

4 **Eō:** to there; ibi is ‘there;’ inde is ‘from  
 there;’ and eō ‘to there’

**quō in locō:** in quō locō

5 **esset:** impf. subj. sum, ind. question

**quod cum:** which when...; relative clause

7 **eī:** to him; dat. of compound verb

**sociōs:** as comrades; predicative

8 **ut...trānsīret:** so that...might; impf. subj.  
 trānseō in a purpose clause

10 **solvēre:** to set sail

**verēbātur:** impf. dep. vereor

**nē...mergerētur:** that...might sink; clause  
 of fearing, translate positively

### 53. THE LAST LABOR IS ACCOMPLISHED

Postquam flūmen Stygem hōc modō trānsiit, Herculēs in sēdem ipsīus 1  
 Plūtōnis vēnit; et postquam causam veniendī docuit, ab eō petivit ut  
 Cerberum auferre sibi licēret. Plūtō, quī dē Hercule fāmam acceperat,  
 eum benignē excēpit, et facultātem quam ille petēbat libenter dedit. 5  
 Postulāvit tamen ut Herculēs ipse, cum imperāta Eurystheī fēcisset,  
 Cerberum in Orcum rūrsus redūceret. Herculēs hoc pollicitus est, et  
 Cerberum, quem nōn sine magnō periculō manibus prehenderat, summō  
 cum labōre ex Orcō in lūcem et ad urbem Eurystheī trāxit. Eō cum  
 vēnisset, tantus timor animum Eurystheī occupāvit ut ex ātriō statim  
 refūgerit; cum autem paulum sē ex timōre recēpisset, multīs cum lacrimīs 10  
 obsecrāvit Herculem ut mōnstrum sine morā in Orcum redūceret. Sīc  
 contrā omnium opīniōnem duodecim illī labōrēs quōs Pythia praecēperat  
 intrā duodecim annōs confectī sunt; quae cum ita essent, Herculēs  
 servitūte tandem liberātus magnō cum gaudiō Thēbās rediit.

<b>atrium, atrīū n.</b> : atrium, 3	<b>opīniō, -iōnis f.</b> : opinion, reputation, 6
<b>auferō, -ferre, abstulī, -lātum</b> : carry away 11	<b>Orcus, -ī m.</b> : Orcus, underworld, 11
<b>benignus, -a, -um</b> : kind, 4	<b>petō, petere, petīvī, petītum</b> : seek, aim at, 10
<b>Cerberus, -ī m.</b> : Cerberus, 6	<b>Plūtō, Plūtōnis m.</b> : Pluto, 6
<b>contrā</b> : against (+ acc.), 7	<b>polliceor, -cērī, -citus</b> : promise, proffer, 2
<b>duodecim</b> : twelve, 6	<b>praecipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum</b> : order, take, 6
<b>excipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptum</b> : take out, receive 9	<b>prehendō, -ere, -hēndī, -hēnsum</b> : seize, 5
<b>facultās, -tatis f.</b> : ability, opportunity, 5	<b>Pythia, -ae f.</b> : Pythia, 4
<b>fama, -ae f.</b> : fame, reputation, report, rumor 7	<b>recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum</b> : accept, take back, 8
<b>gaudium, -īū n.</b> : gladness, joy, 9	<b>redūcō, -ere, -xī, -ctus</b> : lead or bring back, 11
<b>imperō (1)</b> : order, command, 12	<b>refugiō, -ere, -fūgī</b> : flee back, 5
<b>intrā</b> : within, among (+ acc.), 4	<b>rūrsus</b> : again, backward, back, 7
<b>lacrima, -ae f.</b> : tear, 10	<b>sēdes, sēdīs f.</b> : seat; abode, home, 5
<b>libenter</b> : gladly, willingly, 12	<b>servitūs, servitūtis, f.</b> : servitude, 2
<b>liberō (1)</b> : to set free, release, 6	<b>sīc</b> : thus, in this way, 2
<b>licet, -ēre, -uit</b> : is allowed, permitted, 5	<b>Styx, Stygis f.</b> : Styx, 6
<b>lūx, lūcis m.</b> : light, 6	<b>Thēbae, -ārum f.</b> : Thebes, 4
<b>mora, -ae f.</b> : delay, hesitation, hindrance, 14	<b>trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractum</b> : to draw, drag, 6
<b>obsecrō (1)</b> : beseech, implore, entreat, 5	<b>trānseō, -īre, -īū (īvī), itus</b> : pass (by), 10
<b>occupō (1)</b> : occupy, seize, 8	

- 1 **hōc modō**: *in this way*; abl. manner
- 2 **trānsiit**: pf. *trānseō*
- 3 **veniendī**: gen. sg. gerund (-ing)
- 4 **petivit ut**: *asked that...; ind. command*
- 5 **licēret**: *it be allowed; impersonal impf.*
- 6 **excēpit**: *welcomed*
- 7 **ut...redūceret**: *that...lead back; ind. command; impf. subjunctive*
- 8 **pollicitus est**: *promised; pf. dep.*
- 9 **Eō**: *to there*

- 10 **paulum**: *a little; adverbial acc.*
- 11 **sē recēpisset**: *had retreated; idiom*
- 12 **ut...redūceret**: *ind. command*
- 13 **praecēperat**: *had instructed*
- 14 **quae cum...essent**: *Since these things were so; i.e. ‘as a result,’*
- 15 **servitūte**: *from...; abl. of separation*
- 16 **Thēbās**: *to Thebes*
- 17 **rediit**: pf. *red-eō*

## 54. THE CENTAUR NESSUS

Postea Herculēs multa alia praeclara perfēcit, quae nunc perscribere longum est. Tandem iam aetāte prōvectus Dēianīram, Oeneī filiam, in matrimonium dūxit; post tamen trēs annōs accidit ut puerum quendam, cui nōmen erat Eunomus, cāsū occīderit. Cum autem mōs esset, ut sī quis hominem cāsū occīdisset, in exsilium īret, Herculēs cum uxōre sua ē finibus eius civitatis exīre matūrāvit. Dum tamen iter faciunt, ad flūmen quoddam pervēnērunt in quō nūllus pōns erat; et dum quaerunt quōnam modō flūmen trānseant, accurrit centaurus Nessus, qui viātōribus auxilium obtulit. Herculēs igitur uxōrem suam in tergum Nessī impōsuit; tum ipse flūmen trānāvit. Nessus autem paulum in aquam prōgressus ad rīpam subitō revertēbātur et Deianīram auferre conābātur. Quod cum animadvertisset Herculēs, ira graviter commōtus arcum intendit et pectus Nessī sagittā trānsfīxit.

**accidō, -ere, accidī:** to happen, fall (on)to, 8  
**accurrō, -ere, -cucurri, -cursum:** to run to, 2  
**aetās, aetatis f.:** age, lifetime, time, 4  
**alius, -a, -ud:** other, another, else, 9  
**animadvertō, -ere:** turn mind to, notice, 6  
**aqua, -ae f.:** water, 11  
**arcus, -ūs m.:** bow, 4  
**auferō, -ferre, abstulī, -lātum:** carry away 11  
**cāsus, -ūs m.:** misfortune, accident, event, 8  
**civitās, cīvitatis f.:** citizenship, state, 1  
**cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum:** to try, attempt, 7  
**Dēianīra, -ae f.:** Deianira, 5  
**ducō, -ere, dūxi, ductus:** lead, draw, bring, 5  
**eō, īre, ī (īvī), itūrus:** go, 3  
**Eunomus, -ī m.:** Eunomus, 1  
**exeō, -ire, -ī, -itus:** go out, 5  
**exsilium, -ī n.:** exile, 2  
**fīnis, -is m./f.:** end, limit, border, boundary, 12  
**imponō, -ere, -posuī, -positus:** place on, 7  
**intendō, -ere, -ndī, -ntum:** stretch out, aim, 4  
**īra, īrae f.:** anger, 12  
**longus, -a, -um:** long, 4  
**matrimōnium, -ī n.:** marriage, 6  
**maturō (1):** to hasten, ripen, 7  
**mōs, mōris m.:** custom, manner, law, 6

**Nessus, -ī m.:** Nessus, 7  
**nōmen, nōminis, n.:** name, 12  
**nunc:** now, at present, 4  
**occidō, -ere, -cidī, -cīsus:** kill, cut down, 14  
**Oeneus, -ī m.:** Oeneus, 1  
**offerō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum:** offer, present 5  
**pectus, pectoris n.:** breast, chest, heart, 3  
**perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum:** accomplish, 3  
**perscrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, scrīptum:** write through, 3  
**pōns, pontis m.:** bridge, 2  
**postea:** after this, afterwards, 7  
**praeclārus, -a, -um:** bright, very famous, 2  
**provehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectum:** carry forth, 3  
**quōnam**  
**revertō, -ere, reversī:** turn back, return, 2  
**rīpa, -ae f.:** bank, shore, 7  
**sagitta, -ae f.:** arrow, 10  
**tergum, -ī n.:** back, 8  
**trānō (1):** to swim across, 1  
**trānseō, -īre, -ī (īvī), itūs:** pass (by), 10  
**trānsfigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixum:** pierce, 4  
**trēs, tria:** three, 9  
**uxor, ūxoris f.:** wife, spouse, 10  
**viātor, -tōris m.:** traveler, 1

- 1 **praeclara:** famous (*things*); neuter pl.
- 2 **aetāte prōvectus:** having advanced in age; abl. of respect; PPP prōvehor
- 3 **trēs annōs:** for...; acc. of duration of time  
**accidit ut:** it happened that; noun result clause with pf. subjunctive
- 4 **cui:** to whom was; 'who had,' or 'whose...'

- was,' dat. of possession
- sī quis: if anyone had killed, he would go
- 7 **quōnam...trānseant:** in what way...; abl. manner; ind. question, pres. subj. trāns-eō
- 11 **Quod:** this; 'which,' English prefers a demonstrative in transitions

## 55. THE POISONED ROBE

Nessus igitur sagittā Herculī transfixus moriens humī iacēbat; at nē 1  
occāsiōnem suū ulcīscendī dīmitteret, ita locūtus est: “Tū, Deianīra, verba  
morientis audī. Sī amōrem maritī tuī cōservāre vīs, hunc sanguinem, quī  
nunc ē pectore meō effunditur, sume ac repōne; tum, sī umquam in 5  
suspiciōnem tibi vēnerit, vestem maritī hōc sanguine inficiēs.” Haec 5  
locūtus, Nessus animam efflāvit; Deianīra autem nihil malī suspicāta  
imperāta fēcit. Paulō post Herculēs bellum contrā Eurytum, rēgem  
Oechaliae, suscēpit; et cum rēgem ipsum cum filiī interfēcisset, Iolēn  
eius filiam captīvam sēcum redūxit. Antequam tamen domum vēnit, 10  
nāvem ad Cēnaeum promuntūrium appulit, et in terram ēgressus āram  
cōstituit, ut Iovī sacrificāret. Dum tamen sacrificium parat, Licham  
comitem suum domum mīsit, quī vestem albam rēferret; mōs enim erat  
apud antīquōs, dum sacrificia facerent, albam vestem gerere. At Deianīra  
verita nē Herculēs amōrem ergā Iolēn habēret, vestem priusquam Lichae  
dedit, sanguine Nessī infēcit. 15

- ac: and, and also, 14  
**albus**, -a, -um: white, 2  
**amor**, -ōris m.: love, desire, passion, 3  
**antequam**: before, 9  
**antīquus**, -a, -um: ancient, 3  
**appellō**, -ere, -pulī, -pulsī: drive to, 14  
**apud**: among, in the presence of (+ acc.), 9  
**āra**, -ae f.: altar, 2  
**bellum**, -ī, n.: war, 6  
**captīvus**, -a, -um: prisoner, 2  
**Cēnaeum**, -ī n.: Cenaeum (in Euboea), 1  
**comes**, -it is m. f.: companion, 3  
**conservō** (1): preserve, keep, 1  
**contrā**: against (+ acc.), 7  
**Deianīra**, -ae f.: Deianira, 5  
**dīmittō**, -ere, -mīsī, --: send away, let go, 8  
**domus**, -ūs f.: house, home, dwelling, 11  
**efflō** (1): breath out, 1  
**effundō**, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum: pour out, 1  
**ergā**: toward, for (+ acc.), 1  
**Eurytus**, -ī m.: Eurytus, 1  
**humī**: on the ground, 2  
**iaceō**, -ēre, -ui: to lie, lie low, 3  
**imperō** (1): order, command, 12  
**inficiō**, -ere, -fecī, -fectum: stain, dye, 4  
**Iolē**, -ēs f.: Iole, 2  
**Iuppiter**, Iovis m.: Jupiter, 8  
**Lichās**, -ae m.: Lichas, 3  
**loquor**, loquī, locūtus sum: speak, address, 9

- malus**, -a, -um: bad, 3  
**maritus**, -ī m.: husband, 3  
**meus**, -a, -um: my, mine, 2  
**moriōr**, morī, **mortuus sum**: to die, 4  
**mōs**, mōris m.: custom, manner, law, 6  
**Nessus**, -ī m.: Nessus, 7  
**nihil**: nothing, 14  
**nunc**: now, at present, 4  
**occāsiō**, -iōnis f.: chance, opportunity, 6  
**Oechalia**, -ae f.: Oechalia, 1  
**pectus**, pectoris n.: breast, chest, heart, 3  
**priusquam**: before than, sooner than, 2  
**promunturium**, -ī n.: promontory, 1  
**redūcō**, -ere, -xī, -ctus: lead or bring back, 11  
**reponō**, -ere, -posuī, -positum: put back, 2  
**sacrificium**, -ī n.: sacrifice, 5  
**sacrificō** (1): to sacrifice, 1  
**sagitta**, -ae f.: arrow, 10  
**sanguis**, sanguinis m.: blood, 6  
**sumō**, sumere, **sumptī**, **sumptum**: to take, 3  
**suscipiō**, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum: undertake, 14  
**suspiciō**, -iōnis f.: suspicion, look askance, 1  
**suspiciō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum: suspect, mistrust, 7  
**trānsfigō**, -figere, -fixī, -fixum: pierce, 4  
**tu**: you, 10  
**tuus**, -a, -um: your, yours, 3  
**ulcīscor**, ulcīscī, **ultus sum**: to avenge, 2  
**vereor**, -ērī, -itus: be afraid, fear; revere, 5  
**vestis**, -is f.: clothing, 12

## 55. THE POISONED ROBE

- 1 **moriēns**: *dying*; pres. pple. morior  
**humī**: *on the ground*; locative  
**nē...dīmitteret**: *so that...not*; neg. purpose clause
- 2 **suī ulcīscendī**: *of avenging themselves*; noun + gerundive: employ a gerundive-gerund flip and translate as gerund + obj.
- 3 **audī**: sg. imperative, audiō  
**vīs**: 2<sup>nd</sup> sg. pres. volō, velle
- 4 **sume, repōne**: sg. imperatives
- 5 **vēnerit, inficiēs**: *if...comes, you will*
- 6 **nihil malī**: *nothing (of) bad*; partitive  
7 **paulō**: *little later*; abl. degree of difference  
9 **sēcum**: cum sē
- 11 **ut...sacrificāret**: *so that...; purpose Iovī*: *to Jupiter*; dat. of interest
- 12 **domum**: *to home*; place to which  
**rēferret**: *would bring*; rel. of purpose
- 14 **verita nē**: *fearing lest*; fearing clause

## 56. THE DEATH OF HERCULES

Herculēs nihil malī suspicans vestem quam Lichās attulerat statim 1  
induit; paulō post tamen dolōrem per omnia membra sēnsit, et quae  
causa esset eius reī magnopere mirābatur. Dolōre paene  
exanimātus, vestem dētrāhere cōnātus est; illa tamen in corpore  
haesit, neque ullō modō abscindī potuit. Tum dēmum Herculēs, 5  
quasi furōre impulsus, in montem Octam sē contulit, et in rogum,  
quem summā celeritāte exstruxit, sē impōsuit. Hoc cum fēcisset,  
eōs quī circumstābant ōrāvit ut rogum quam celerrimē  
succenderent. Omnes diū recusābant; tandem tamen pāstor quīdam,  
ad misericordiam inductus, ignem subdidit. Tum, dum omnia fūmō 10  
obscurantur, Herculēs, dēnsā nūbe velātus ā Iove, in Olympum  
abreptus est.

**abripiō, -ere, -ripūī, -reptum:** snatch away 2  
**abscindō, -ere, -scidī, -scissum:** tear off, 1  
**afferō, -ferre, attulī, allātum:** carry to bring 5  
**celeritās, -tātis f.:** speed, quickness, 7  
**circumstō, -āre, -steti:** stand around, 1  
**cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum:** to try, attempt, 7  
**dēmum:** at length, finally, 3  
**densus, -a, -um:** thick, 2  
**dētrahō, -ere, -axī, -actum:** draw away/off, 2  
**diū:** a long time, long, 13  
**exanimō (1):** to kill, exhaust, 9  
**exstruō, -ere, -uxī, -ūctum:** build, heap up, 1  
**fūmus, -ī m.:** smoke, 2  
**furor, -ōris m.:** rage, fury, madness, 4  
**haereō, -ere, haesi, haesūrum:** stick, cling, 3  
**ignis, ignis, m.:** fire, 9  
**impellō, ere, -pulī, -pulsum:** drive on, incite 3  
**imponō, -ere, -posuī, -positus:** place on, 7  
**indūcō, -ere, -xi, -ctum:** induce, lead in, 2  
**induō, -ere, induī, indūtum:** put on, 8  
**Iuppiter, Iovis m.:** Jupiter, 8  
**Lichās, -ae m.:** Lichas, 3

1 **summā celeritāte:** with...; abl. manner  
8 **eōs quī:** those who; demonstrative

**malus, -a, -um:** bad, 3  
**membrum, -ī n.:** limb, member, 10  
**mīror, -ārī, -ātus:** to wonder, be amazed at, 7  
**misericordia, -ae f.:** pity, compassion, 1  
**mons, montis m.:** mountain, mount, 5  
**nihil:** nothing, 14  
**nūbēs, -is f.:** cloud, 1  
**obscūrō (1):** hide, conceal, 1  
**Olympus, -ī m.:** Olympus, 1  
**ōrō (1):** pray (for), entreat, beseech, 5  
**paene:** almost, nearly, 8  
**pāstor, pastoris m.:** shepherd, 2  
**quasi:** as if, 4  
**recūsō (1):** refuse, give a reason against, 1  
**rogus, -ī m.:** pyre, 2  
**subdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum:** put under, apply, 1  
**succendō, -ere, -cendi, -censum:** kindle, 1  
**suspicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum:** suspect, mistrust, 7  
**ullus, -a, -um:** any, 3  
**velō (1):** to veil, cover, 1  
**vestis, -is f.:** clothing, 12

**ut..succenderent:** that..; ind. command  
**quam celerrimē:** as fast as possible

## 57. THE WICKED UNCLE

Erant oīlim in Thessaliā duo frātrēs, quōrum alter Aesōn, Peliās 1  
 alter appellābātur. Aesōn prīmō rēgnū obtinuerat; at post paucōs  
 annōs Peliās, rēgnī cupiditātē adductus, nōn modō frātrem suum  
 expulit, sed etiam in animō habēbat Iāsonem, Aesōnis filium, 5  
 interficere. Quīdam tamen ex amīcīs Aesōnis, ubi sententiam  
 Peliiae cognōvērunt, puerum ē tantō perīculō ēripere cōnstituerunt.  
 Noctū igitur Iāsonem ex urbe abstulērunt, et cum posterō diē ad  
 rēgem rediissent, eī renuntiāvērunt puerum mortuum esse. Peliās  
 cum hoc audīvisset, etsī rē vērā magnum gaudium percipiēbat,  
 speciem tamen dolōris praebuit et quae causa esset mortis 10  
 quaesīvit. Illī autem cum bene intellegerent dolōrem eius falsum  
 esse, nesciō quam fābulam dē morte puerī finxērunt.

- addūcō, -ere, -xi, -ctum:** to lead to, bring, 8
- Aesōn, -ōnis m.:** Aeson, father of Jason, 4
- alter, -era, -erum:** other (of two), second, 7
- amīcus, -i m.:** friend, 6
- appellō (1):** call (by name), name, 12
- auferō, -ferre, abstulī, -lātum:** carry away 11
- bene:** well, 5
- cupiditās, -tātis f.:** desire, passion, 5
- duo, duae, duo:** two, 10
- ēripiō, -ere, -ui, reuptus:** tear from, rescue, 2
- etsī:** even if, although, though, 13
- expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum:** drive out, 3
- fabula, -ae f.:** story, 1
- fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsum:** deceive, 3
- filius, -iī m.:** son, 10
- fingō, -ere, finxi, fictum:** make up, imagine, 1

- frāter, -tris m.:** brother, 5
- gaudium, -iī n.:** gladness, joy, 9
- moriō, morī, mortuus sum:** to die, 4
- mors, mortis, f.:** death, 9
- nesciō, -ire, -scīvī, -scītum:** not know, 4
- noctū:** at night, by night, 2
- obtineō, -ere, -ui, -tentum:** hold, maintain, 9
- ōlim:** once, formerly, 10
- Peliās, -ae f.:** Pelias, 14
- percipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum:** feel perceive 5
- posterus, -a, -um:** following, next, 2
- praebēō, -ere, -ui, -itum:** to present, give, 7
- renuntiō, (1):** report, announce, 2
- sententia, -ae f.:** thought, feeling, opinion, 2
- Thessalia, -ae f.:** Thessaly, 4
- verus, -a, -um:** true, real, 2

1 **Erant:** there were

2 **alter...alter:** one...the other; apply the verb appellābātur to both nom. subjects

3 **prīmō:** first; adverb

4 **regnī:** for the kingdom; objective gen. **adductus:** attracted; “drawn” PPP

5 **nōn modō...etiam:** not only...but also **in animō habēbat:** had in mind; common way in Latin to express ‘I intended’

6 **ēripere:** commonly means ‘to rescue’

7 **abstulērunt:** pf. au-ferō (ā/ab + ferō)

8 **cum...audiūisset:** plpf. subj. audiō, translate as you would plpf. indicative

9 **rē vērā:** in true fact; abl. of respect

10 **quae causa esset mortis:** what was...; indirect question with impf. subj. sum

11 **dolōrem...esse:** that...; see 16 above

12 **nesciō quam:** some; “I-do-not-know-what,” indefinite modifying fābulam

redeō as often translate in the correct tense  
**postero diē:** on...; abl. of time when

8 **eī:** nom. pl. or dat. sg. for is, ea, id

9 **puerum...esse:** that...; ind. discourse,

10 **cum...audiūisset:** plpf. subj. audiō, translate as you would plpf. indicative

11 **rē vērā:** in true fact; abl. of respect

12 **quae causa esset mortis:** what was...;

indirect question with impf. subj. sum

13 **dolōrem...esse:** that...; see 16 above

14 **nesciō quam:** some; “I-do-not-know-

what,” indefinite modifying fābulam

## 58. A FATEFUL ACCIDENT

Post breve tempus Peliās, veritus nē regnum suum tantā vī et 1  
fraude occupātūm āmitteret, amīcum quendam Delphōs mīsit, quī  
ōrāculūm cōnsuleret. Ille igitur quam celerrimē Delphōs sē contulit  
et quam ob causam vēnisset demōnstrāvit. Respondit ūrāculūm  
nūllūm esse in praesentiā pērīculūm; monuit tamen Peliam ut sī 5  
quis ūnum calceum gerens venīret, eum cavēret. Post paucīs annīs  
accidit ut Peliās magnum sacrificium factūrus esset; nuntiōs in  
omnēs partēs dīmīserat et certam diem conveniendī dīxerat. Diē  
constitūtā magnus hominū numerus undique ex agrīs convēnit; in  
hīs autem vēnit etiam Iāson, quī ā pueritiā apud centaurūm 10  
quendam habitāverat. Dum tamen iter facit, ūnum ē calceīs in  
trānseundō nesciō quō flūmine āmīsit.

**accidō, -ere, accidī:** to happen, fall (on)to, 8  
**ager, -grī m.:** land, field, territory, 11  
**amicus, -ī m.:** friend, 6  
**āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum:** lose, let go, 8  
**apud:** among, in the presence of (+ acc.), 9  
**calceus, -ī m.:** shoe, 3  
**caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautum:** be on guard, 1  
**certus, -a, -um:** fixed, sure, 11  
**consulō, consulere, -lūī, -lūtūm:** to consult, 3  
**Delphī, -ōrum m.:** Delphi, oracle of Apollo, 2  
**dēmonstrō (1):** to show, demonstrate, 13  
**dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, --:** send away, let go, 8  
**fraus, fraudis f.:** fraud, deception, 2  
**moneō, -ere, -uī, monitum:** to warn, 1  
**nesciō, -īre, -scīvī, -scītūm:** not know, 4

- 1 **veritus nē:** having feared that...would;  
PPP, fearing clause (nē + impf. subj.)  
**vī:** with force; irreg. abl. of means, vīs  
2 **Delphōs:** to Delphī; place to which  
3 **cōnsuleret:** would consult; purpose  
4 **quam ob causam:** for what reason  
vēnisset: plpf. subj., ind. question  
5 **nūllūm...pērīculūm:** that...; ind. disc.;  
main verb pf. so translate inf. as impf.  
**ut...cavēret:** that he beware of; ind.  
command, impf. subj. in secondary seq.  
**sī quis:** if anyone...; quis is indefinite  
before sī, nisi, num, and nē  
6 **Post paucīs annīs:** a few years later;  
'later by a few years,' abl. of degree of

**numerūs, -ī m.:** number, multitude, 7  
**nuntiōs, -īī m.:** messenger, 12  
**ob:** on account of (acc.), 13  
**occupō (1):** occupy, seize, 8  
**ōrāculūm, -ī n.:** oracle, 11  
**Peliās, -ae f.:** Pelias, 14  
**Peliās, -ae f.:** Pelias, 14  
**praesentia, -ae f.:** the present, 1  
**pueritia, -ae, f.:** childhood, 1  
**respondeō, -ēre, -dī, -ōnsus:** to answer, 13  
**sacrificium, -īī n.:** sacrifice, 5  
**trānseō, -īre, -īī (īvī), itus:** pass (by), 10  
**undique:** from everywhere, from all sides, 7  
**vereor, -ērī, -itus:** be afraid, fear; revere, 5

- difference  
7 **accidit ut:** it happened that; as often,  
accidit introduces a noun result clause  
**factūrus esset:** was going to make; fut.  
periphrastic (fut. pple + sum), impf. subj.  
8 **partēs:** directions  
**dīxerat:** had appointed  
**conveniendī:** of convening; gen. gerund  
**Diē constitūā:** on...; abl. of time when  
9 **hominū:** partitive genitive  
12 **trānseundō:** in crossing some river; this  
gerundive of trānseō modifies flūmine;  
employ a gerund-gerundive flip: translate as  
a gerund (-ing) with flūmine as direct obj.  
**nesciō quō:** some; 'I-do-not-know-what'

## 59. THE GOLDEN FLEECE

Iāsōn igitur cum calceum āmissum nūllō modō recipere posset, ūnō 1  
 pede nūdō in rēgiam pervēnit. Quem cum Peliās vīdisset, subitō  
 timōre affectus est; intellēxit enim hunc esse hominem quem  
 ḍrāculum demonstrāvisset. Hoc igitur cōnsilium iniit. Rēx erat  
 quīdam Aeētēs, quī regnum Colchidis illō tempore obtinēbat. Huic 5  
 commissum erat illud vellus aureum quod Phrixus olim ibi  
 relīquerat. Cōstituit igitur Peliās Iāsonī negōtium dare ut hōc  
 vellere potīrētur; cum enim rēs esset magnī perīculī, eum in itinere  
 perītūrum esse spērābat. Iāsonem igitur ad sē arcessīvit, et eum  
 cohortātus quid fierī vellet docuit. Ille etsī intellegēbat rem esse 10  
 difficillimam, negōtium libenter suscēpit.

**Aeētēs:** Acetes, king of Cochis, 10  
**afficiō, -ere, -fēcī, fectum:** influence, treat, 13  
**āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum:** lose, let go, 8  
**arcessō, -ere, -īvī, -itum:** summon, invite, 2  
**aureus, -a, -um:** golden, 13  
**calceus, -i m.:** shoe, 3  
**cohortor, -hortārī, -hortātus:** encourage, 2  
**Colchis, -idis f.:** Colchis, 4  
**committō, -mittere, -mīsī:** commit, entrust, 6  
**dēmonstrō (1):** to show, demonstrate, 13  
**difficilis, -e:** hard, difficult, troublesome, 6  
**doceō, -ere, -ūlī, -ctus:** teach, tell, 9  
**etsī:** even if, although, though, 13  
**fīō, fierī, factus:** become, be made, 9  
**ineō, -ire, -īlī, -itum:** go into, enter, 4  
**libenter:** gladly, willingly, 12

- 1 **cum...posset:** when...; impf. subj.  
 possum, translate as impf. indicative  
**nūllō modō:** in no way; abl. manner  
**ūnō...nūdō:** abl. absolute, add ‘being,’  
 since there is no pple for sum, the subject  
 and pred. form the absolute without a pple
- 2 **quem cum:** whom when...; the pronoun is  
 part of the cum-clause but often precedes  
 the conjunction ‘cum’ in transitions
- 3 **hunc esse:** that...; acc. subject in ind. disc.
- 4 **demonstrāvisset:** plpf. subj. in a  
 relative clause of characteristic

**negōtium, iī n.:** task, business, occupation, 13  
**nūdus, -a, -um:** naked, bare, 1  
**obtineō, -ēre, -ūlī, -tentum:** hold, maintain, 9  
**olīm:** once, formerly, 10  
**ōrāculum, -ī n.:** oracle, 11  
**Peliās, -ae f.:** Pelias, 14  
**pereō, -perīre, periū, peritūrum:** to perish, 1  
**pēs, pedis m.:** foot, 8  
**Phrixus –ī m.:** Phrixus, 1  
**potior, -īrī, potītus sum:** get possession of, 1  
**recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum:** take back, 8  
**rēgia, -ae f.:** palace, 4  
**relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -līctum:** leave behind, 9  
**spērō (1):** hope (for), expect, 5  
**suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum:** undertake, 14  
**vellus, velleris n.:** fleece, 12

- 5 **illō tempore:** at...; abl. of time when  
 Huic: dat. ind. obj. of commissum erat
- 6 **commissum erat:** had been entrusted
- 7 **nēgōtium ut:** task, (namely) that...
- 8 **potīrētur:** that he possess; ind. command,  
 impf. subj. deponent potior governs an abl.  
**magnī perīculī:** of...; gen. description
- 9 **peritūrum esse:** fut. inf. in ind. disc.
- 10 **cohortātus:** having urged; deponent PPP  
**quid fierī vellet:** what he wanted to be  
 done; ind. question, impf. subj. volō
- 11 **difficillimam:** superlative, acc. pred.

## 60. THE BUILDING OF THE GOOD SHIP ARGO

Cum tamen Colchis multōrum diērum iter ab eō locō abesset, sōlus 1  
Iāsōn proficisci nōluit. Dīmīsit igitur nuntiōs in omnēs partēs, quī  
causam itineris docērent et diem certam conveniendī dīcerent.  
Intereā, postquam omnia quae sunt ūsuī ad armandās nāvēs  
comportārī iussit, negōtium dedit Argō cuidam, quī summam 5  
scientiam nauticārum rērum habēbat, ut nāvem aedificāret. In hīs  
rēbus circiter decem diēs consumptī sunt; Argus enim, quī operī  
praeerat, tantam diligentiam adhibēbat ut nē nocturnum quidem  
tempus ad labōrem intermitteret. Ad multitūdinem hominum  
trānsportandam nāvis paulō erat lātior quam quibus in nostrō marī 10  
ūtī consuēvimus, et ad vim tempestātum perferendam tōta ē rōbore  
facta est.

**absum, -esse, āfūī:** to be away, be absent, 7  
**adhibeō, -ēre, -ūī, -itum:** to apply, hold to, 4  
**aedificō (1):** make a building, build, 2  
**Argō, -ūs f.:** Argo, 2  
**Argus, -ī m.:** Argus, builder of the Argo, 1  
**armō (1):** arm, equip, 4  
**certus, -a, -um:** fixed, sure, 11  
**circiter:** about, around, 1  
**Colchis, -idis f.:** Colchis, 4  
**comportō (1):** carry together, collect, 1  
**consuescō, -ere, -ēvī, -suētum:** to accustom, 3  
**consumō, -ere, -mpsī, -mptum:** take, spend 9  
**conveniō, -ire, vēnī, ventum:** come together 8  
**decem:** ten, 4  
**diligentia, -ae f.:** diligence, attentiveness, 5  
**dīmittō, -ere, -mīstī, --:** send away, let go, 8  
**doceō, -ere, -ūī, -ctus:** teach, tell, 9  
**intereā:** meanwhile, 7  
**intermittō, -ere:** interrupt, break off, 5

- 1 **iter:** a journey of many days; acc. extent
- 3 **dicerent:** who would appoint; relative clause of purpose, see line 4
- 4 **sunt ūsuī:** are of use; ‘for a use’ dat. sg. of purpose, 4<sup>th</sup> decl. noun ūsus
- 5 **ad...nāvēs:** for arming...; ‘for ships to be armed’ use a gerundive-gerund flip and translate as gerund + acc. direct object
- 6 **ut...aedificāret:** that...; purpose
- 8 **praeerat:** was (in charge) over + dat. nē nocturnum quidem: not even night...;

**lātus, -a, -um:** wide, broad, 1  
**multitūdō, -tūdīnis f.:** multitude, 2  
**nauticus, -a, -um:** naval, nautical, 1  
**negōtium, īī n.:** task, business, occupation, 13  
**nocturnus, -a, -um:** nocturnal, 2  
**nōlō, nōlle, nōlūī:** not...wish, be unwilling 12  
**noster, nostra, nostrum:** our, 1  
**nuntius, -īī m.:** messenger, 12  
**opus, -eris n.:** work, deed, toil, 9  
**perferō, -ferre, -tūlī, -lātus:** bear, betake, 2  
**praesum, -esse, -fūī:** be before, preside over 2  
**quidem:** indeed, in fact, assuredly, certainly, 8  
**rōbor, rōbōris n.:** oak; strength, 1  
**scientia, -ae f.:** knowledge, wisdom, 6  
**sōlus, -a, -um:** alone, only, lone, sole, 6  
**tōtus -a, -um:** whole, entire, 14  
**transportō (1):** carry over or across, 2  
**ūsus, ūsūs m.:** use, employment, 3  
**ūtor, ūtī, ūsum sum:** use, employ, enjoy 2

- 7 **nē, quidem** emphasize an intervening word
- 8 **ut...intermitterent:** that; result clause
- 9 **ad labōrem:** for; ‘ad’ expresses purpose  
**ad...:** for transporting...; ad + gerundive
- 10 **paulō:** a little; abl. of degree of difference  
**quam:** than; follows a comparative adj.  
**quibus:** (those) which; abl. obj. of ūtī
- 11 **ūtī:** deponent inf. ūtor, governs an abl. obj.  
**ad...perferendam:** ad + gerundive; ll. 1, 6  
**vim:** irreg. feminine acc. sg. of vīs

## 61. THE ANCHOR IS WEIGHED

Intereā is diēs appetēbat quem Iāsōn per nuntiōs ēdīixerat, et ex omnibus regiōnibus Graeciae multī, quōs aut reī novitās aut spēs glōriae movēbat, undique conveniēbant. Trāditum est autem in hōc numerō fuisse Herculem, de quō suprā multa perscrīpsimus, Orpheum, citharoedum praeclārissimum, Theseum, Castorem, multōsque aliōs quōrum nōmina sunt nōtissima. Ex hīs Iāsōn quōs arbitrātus est ad omnia pētūla subeunda paratissimōs esse, eōs ad numerum quinquāginta dēlegit et sociōs sibi adiunxit; tum paucōs diēs commorātus, ut ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparāret, nāvem dēdūxit, et tempestātem ad nāvigandum idōneam nactus magnō cum plausū omnium solvit.

adiungō, -ere, -iunxi, -iunctum: join to, 2  
alius, -a, -ud: other, another, else, 9  
appetō, -ere, -ivī, -petitum: draw near, 3  
arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum: to judge, think, 11  
aut: or (aut...aut – either...or), 2  
Castor, -oris m.: Castor, 1  
cāsus, -ūs m.: misfortune, accident, event, 8  
citharoedus, -ī m.: cithara-player, 1  
commoror, -ārī, -ātum: delay, linger, tarry, 3  
comparō (1): prepare, collect, 4  
conveniō, -ire, vēnī, ventum: come together 8  
dēdūcō, -ere: lead or bring down, launch, 10  
dēligo, -ere, -lēgī, -lectum: choose, select, 6  
ēdicō, -ere, -dixī, dictum: declare, proclaim, 4  
glōria, -ae f.: glory, 1  
Graecia, -ae f.: Greece, 7  
idōneus, -a, -um: suitable, appropriate, 12  
intereā: meanwhile, 7

3 Trāditum est: it was reported that...

7 ad...subeunda: for undergoing...; subeō

10 ad nāvigandum: for sailing; a gerund

nanciscor, nancisci, nactus: attain, meet, 7  
navigō (1): to sail, 5  
nōmen, nōminis, n.: name, 12  
nōtus, -a, -um: known, familiar, 3  
novitās, -tātis f.: newness, novelty, 3  
numerus, -ī m.: number, multitude, 7  
nuntius, -ī m.: messenger, 12  
Orpheus, -ī m.: Orpheus, 1  
perscrībō, -ere, -scripsi, scriptum: write through, 3  
plausus, -ūs m.: applause, 1  
praeclārus, -a, -um: bright, very famous, 2  
quinquāgintā: fifty, 1  
subeō, -ire, -ī: to undergo, go up (to), 5  
subsidiū, -ī n.: support, relief, protection 1  
suprā: above, before, 6  
Thēseus, -ī m.: Theseus, 1  
undique: from everywhere, from all sides, 7

nactus: having attained; PPP, nanciscor

11 solvit: set sail

## 62. A FATAL MISTAKE

Haud multō post Argonautae (ita enim appellābantur quī in istā nāvī 1  
vehēbantur) īnsulam quandam, nōmine Cyzicum, attigērunt; et ē nāvī  
ēgressī ā rēge illīus regiōnis hospitiō exceptī sunt. Paucās  
hōrās ibi commorātī ad sōlis occāsum rursus solvērunt; sed postquam 5  
pauca mīlia passuum progressī sunt, tanta tempestās subitō coōrta est ut  
cursum tenēre nōn possent, et in eandem partem īnsulae unde nuper  
profectī erant magnō cum periculō dēicerentur. Incolae tamen, cum nox  
esset obscūra, Argonautās nōn agnōscēbant, et nāvem inimīcam vēnisse  
arbitrātī arma rapuērunt et eōs ēgredī prohibēbant. Āriter in lītore 10  
pugnātum est, et rēx ipse, quī cum aliīs dēcucurrerat, ab Argonautīs  
occīsus est. Mox tamen, cum iam dīlucēseret, sēnsērunt incolae sē errāre  
et arma abiēcērunt; Argonautae autem cum rēgem occīsum esse vīdērent,  
magnum dolōrem percēpērunt.

**abiciō, -icere, -iū, -itūrum:** throw away, 1  
**acrīter:** sharply, fiercely, 2  
**agnoscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtūm:** to recognize, 4  
**alius, -a, -ud:** other, another, else, 9  
**appellō (1):** call (by name), name, 12  
**arbitrōr, -ārī, -ātūs sum:** to judge, think, 11  
**arma, -ōrum n.:** arms, equipment, tools, 6  
**attingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctūm:** touch at, reach, 3  
**commorōr, -ārī, -ātūm:** delay, linger, tarry, 3  
**coōrīor, -orīrī, -ortūs sum:** to arise, 4  
**currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursus:** run, rush, fly, 4  
**Cyzicus, -ī f.:** Cyzicus, 1  
**dēcurrō, -ere, -currūrī:** to run down, 1  
**dēciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectūm:** throw/cast down 2  
**dilucēscō, -ere, -lūxī:** grow light, 1  
**excipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptūm:** receive, welcome 9  
**haud:** by no means, not at all, 4  
**hora, -ae f.:** hour, 5  
**hospiūtūm, ī n.:** hospitality, 5  
**incola, -ae m.:** inhabitant, 7

1 **multō:** much; abl. of degree of difference  
3 **ēgressī:** having stepped out; PPP, ēgredior  
exceptī sunt: were welcomed  
4 **hōrās:** for...; acc. duration of time  
commorātī: having...; PPP deponent  
solvērunt: they set sail; ‘set loose’  
5 **mīlia passuum:** for...miles; acc. extent  
progressī sunt: pf. deponent progredior,  
translate in the active  
coōrta est: pf. deponent coōrīor  
ut...: that...; result, impf. possum

**inimīcus, -a, -um:** unfriendly, hostile, 2  
**iste, ista, istud:** that or those (of yours), 7  
**mīlle (pl. mīlia):** thousand, 7  
**nōmen, nōminis, n.:** name, 12  
**nox, noctis, f.:** night, 7  
**nūper:** recently, lately, not long ago, 2  
**obscūrus, -a, -um:** dark, 1  
**occāsus, -ūs m.:** fall, destruction, 4  
**occidō, -ere, -cidī, -cīsus:** kill, cut down, 14  
**passus, -ūs:** pace, 7  
**percipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptūm:** feel perceive 5  
**prohibēō, -ēre, -hibūrī:** hold back, hinder, 2  
**pugnō (1):** to fight, 4  
**rapiō, -ere, rapuī, raptūm:** to seize, snatch, 5  
**rursus:** again, backward, back, 7  
**sōl, sōlis m.:** sun, 10  
**teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentūm:** to hold, keep 13  
**unde:** whence, from which source, 6  
**vehō, -ere, vēxī, vectūm:** to convey, carry, 5

7 **cum...esset:** since...; causal, impf. subj.  
**nāvem...vēnisse:** that...; ind. disc.  
with pf. inf. veniō, nāvem is acc. subj.  
9 **arbitrātī:** having...; dep. PPP  
ēgredī: from stepping out; dep. inf. ēgredior  
10 **pugnātūm est:** they fought; “it was  
fought,” impersonal pass., translate active  
11 **incolae:** nom. subject of sēnsērunt  
sē errāre: that...; reflexive, ind. disc.  
12 **occīsum esse:** pf. pass. inf. occīdō in  
ind. discourse; acc. subject is rēgem

### 63. THE LOSS OF HYLAS

Postrīdiē eius diēt̄ Iāsōn tempestātem satis idōneam esse arbitrātus 1  
 (summa enim tranquillitās iam cōsecūta erat), ancorās sustulit, et  
 pauca mīlia passuum progressus ante noctem Mysiam attigit. Ibi  
 paucās hōrās in ancorīs exspectāvit; ā nautīs enim cognōverat  
 aquae cōpiam quam sēcum habērent iam dēficere, quam ob causam 5  
 quīdam ex Argonautīs in terram ēgressī aquam quaerēbant. Hōrum  
 in numerō erat Hylās quīdam, puer formā praestantissimā. Quī dum  
 fontem quaerit, ā comitibus paulum sēcesserat. Nymphae autem  
 quae fontem colēbant, cum iuvenem vīdissent, eī persuādēre  
 cōnātae sunt ut sēcum manēret; et cum ille negāret sē hoc factūrum 10  
 esse, puerum vī abstulērunt.

**anca**ra, **anca**re f.: anchor, 7  
**ante**: before, in front of (acc.); adv. before, 5  
**aqua**, -ae f.: water, 11  
**arbitrō**, -ērī, -ātūs sum: to judge, think, 11  
**attīngō**, -ēre, -tīgī, -tāctūm: touch at, reach, 3  
**auferō**, -ferre, abstulī, -lātūm: carry away 11  
**colō**, -ere, coluī, cultūm: cultivate, cherish, 3  
**comes**, -it is m. f.: companion, 3  
**cōnōr**, cōnārī, cōnātūs sum: to try, attempt, 7  
**consequor**, -ī, secūtūs: follow after; pursue, 3  
**copia**, -ae f.: abundance, supply; troops, 10  
**dēficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectūm: fail, 3  
**fons**, **fontis** m.: origin, fount, source, 3  
**forma**, -ae, f.: beauty, shape, form, 3  
**hora**, -ae f.: hour, 5  
**Hylās**, -ae m.: Hylas, 2  
**idōneus**, -a, -um: suitable, appropriate, 12  
**iuvenis**, -is m.: youth, young man, 4

- 1 **postrīdiē eius diēt̄**: *the day after that day*; abl. time when; gen.
- 2 **tempestātem...esse**: ind. disc.
- 3 **arbitrātus**: *having thought*; dep. PPP
- 4 **sustulit**: pf. suf-ferō
- 5 **mīlia passuum**: see note line 2
- 6 **progressus**: dep. PPP progredior
- 7 **paucās hōrās**: *for...; acc. duration*
- 8 **cōpiam...dēficere**: *that...; ind. disc.*
- 9 **habērent**: subordinate verbs often are

**maneō**, -ēre, mansī, --: to stay, wait, 9  
**mīlle** (pl. **mīlia**): thousand, 7  
**Mysia**, -ae f.: Mysia, 1  
**nauta**, -ae f.: sailor, 3  
**negō** (1): to deny, say that...not, 3  
**nox**, **noctis**, f.: night, 7  
**numerūs**, -ī m.: number, multitude, 7  
**nympha**, -ae f.: nymph, 2  
**ob**: on account of (acc.), 13  
**passus**, -ūs: pace, 7  
**persuādeō**, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum: persuade, 9  
**postrīdiē**: the day after, the next day, 4  
**praestō**, -stāre, -stītī: stand in front, show, 6  
**satis**: enough, sufficient, 6  
**sēcēdō**, -ere, sēcessī, sēcessum: to withdraw 1  
**tollō**, tolle, sustulī, sublātūm: raise, lift up 10  
**tranquillitās**, -tātīs f.: calm, tranquility, 2

- 6 **Hōrum**: *of these*; partitive gen.
- 7 **formā**: *of...beauty*; abl. of quality
- 8 **Quī dum**: *while he...; 'who while...'*
- 9 **eī**: him; dat. sg. (is, ea, id) of **persuadeō**
- 10 **ut..manēret**: *to remain*; ind command
- 11 **sē...factūrum esse**: *that...; fut. inf.*
- 12 **abstulerunt**: pf. au-ferō (ā/ab + ferō)

## 64. DIFFICULT DINING

Post haec Argonautae ad Thrāciam cursum tenuērunt, et postquam 1  
ad oppidum Salmydessum nāvem appulērunt, in terram ēgressī  
sunt. Ibi cum ab incolīs quaesissent quis regnum eius regiōnis  
obtinēret, certiōrēs factī sunt Phineum quendam tum rēgem esse.  
Cognōvērunt etiam hunc caecum esse et dīrō quōdam suppliciō 5  
affīcī, quod olim sē crudelissimum in filiōs suōs praebuisset. Cuius  
suppliciū hoc erat genus: missa erant ā Iove mōnstra quaedam speciē  
horribilī, quae capita virginum, corpora volucrum habēbant. Hae  
volucrēs, quae Harpyiae appellābantur, Phineō summam molestiam  
adferēbant; quotiēns enim ille accubuerat, veniēbant et cibum 10  
appositum statim auferēbant. Quō factum est ut haud multum  
abasset quīn Phineus famē morerētur.

**absum**, -esse, āfūī: to be away, be absent, 7  
**accumbō**, -ere, accubūī: lie (at dinner), 4  
**afferō**, -ferre, attulī, allātūm: carry to bring 5  
**afficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, fectūm: influence, treat, 13  
**appellō** (1): call (by name), name, 12  
**appellō**, -ere, -pūlī, -pulsī: drive to, 14  
**appōnō**, -ere, -posūī, -positūm: set before, 3  
**auferō**, -ferre, abstulī, -lātūm: carry away 11  
**caecus**, -a, -um: blind, 2  
**certus**, -a, -um: fixed, sure, 11  
**cibus**, -ī m.: food, 5  
**crūdēlis**, -e: cruel, bitter, bloody, 6  
**cursus**, -ūs m.: course, running, haste, 10  
**dīrus**, -a, -um: dreadful, 1  
**famēs**, -is f.: hunger, 3  
**genus**, -eris n.: birth, race; kind, family, 2  
**Harpyiae**, -ārum f.: Harpies, 3  
**haud**: by no means, not at all, 4

**horribilis**, -e: horrible, dreadful, 11  
**incola**, -ae m.: inhabitant, 7  
**Iuppiter**, Iovis m.: Jupiter, 8  
**molestia**, -ae f.: trouble, annoyance, 1  
**moriōr**, morī, mortuus sum: to die, 4  
**obtineō**, -ere, -uī, -tentum: hold, maintain, 9  
**olim**: once, formerly, 10  
**oppidum**, -ī n.: town, 4  
**Phīneus**, -ī m.: Phineus, 7  
**praebēō**, -ere, -uī, -itum: to present, give, 7  
**quīn**: nay (even), (but) that, 12  
**quotiēns**: as often as, 2  
**Salmydessus**, -ī m.: Salmydessus, 1  
**supplicium**, -ī n.: punishment, supplication, 5  
**teneō**, tenērē, tenuī, tentum: to hold, keep 13  
**Thrācia**, -ae f.: Thrace, 3  
**virgō**, virginis f.: maiden, 2  
**volucris**, -is f.: bird, 3

- 1 **Post haec**: after these (things); neuter acc.
- 3 **ab incolīs**: from...; abl. of source  
**quis...obtinēret**: who...; ind. question
- 4 **certiōrēs factī sunt**: were made more certain; ‘were informed’ a common phrase in Caesar, often followed by ind. discourse
- 5 **hunc caecum esse...affici**: that this one...; ind. discourse with 2 verbs: pres. pass. inf.
- 6 **quod**: because...  
**in...**: against
- praebuisset**: had shown; governs a double acc.; relative clause of characteristic, praebēō (prae-habeō)

- 7 **cuius supplici**: gen. modifies genus
- 7 **speciē horribili**: of...; abl. quality; the adj. is 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. i-stem (horribile → horribilī)
- 8 **(et) corpora**: and bodies; ellipsis, add ‘et’
- 9 **Phineō**: to...; dat. of compound verb
- 10 **quotiēns enim**: for...; enim is postpositive
- 11 **appositum**: having been served;  
‘having been set before,’ PPP appōnō
- Quō factum...morerētur**: (because of)  
which it happened that it was by no means very far away that Phineus would die from famine; abl. of cause, noun result clause

## 65. THE DELIVERANCE OF PHINEUS

Rēs igitur male sē habēbat cum Argonautae nāvem appulērunt. Phīneus autem simul atque audīvit eōs in suōs fīnēs ēgressōs esse, magnopere gāvisus est. Sciēbat enim quantam opīniōnem virtūtis Argonautae habērent, nec dubitābat quīn sibi auxilium ferrent. Nūntium igitur ad nāvem mīsit, quī lāsonem sociōsque ad rēgiam vocāret. Eō cum vēnissent, Phīneus demōnstrāvit quantō in perīculō suaē rēs essent, et prōmīsit sē magna praemia datūrum esse, sī illī remedium repperissent. Argonautae negōtium libenter suscēpērunt, et ubi hōra vēnit, cum rēge accubuērunt; at simul ac cēna apposita est, Harpyiae cenāculum intrāvērunt et cibum auferre cōnābantur. Argonautae pīmum gladiīs volucrēs petiērunt; cum tamen vidērent hoc nihil prōdesse, Zētēs et Calais, quī alīs erant instructī, in āera sē sublevāvērunt, ut dēsuper impetum facerent. Quod cum sēnsissent Harpyiae, reī novitātē perterritae statim aufūgērunt, neque posteā umquam rediērunt.

**ac:** and, and also, 14

**accumbō, -ere, accubūt:** lie (at dinner), 4

**aēr, aēris n.:** air, 7

**āla, -ae f.:** wing, 2

**appellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsī:** drive to, 14

**appōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum:** set before, 3

**auferō, -ferre, abstulī, -lātum:** carry away 11

**aufugiō, -ere, -fūgī:** flee, run away, 1

**Calais, is m.:** Calais, 1

**cēna, -ae f.:** dinner, 5

**cenāculum, -ī n.:** dining-room, 1

**cibus, -ī m.:** food, 5

**cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum:** to try, attempt, 7

**dēmonstrō (1):** to show, demonstrate, 13

**dēsūper:** from above, 2

**dubitō (1):** to hesitate, doubt, 5

**ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus:** carry, bear, endure, 10

**finis, -is m./f.:** end, limit, border, boundary, 12

**gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum:** enjoy, rejoice, 4

**gladius, -ī m.:** sword, 10

**Harpīiae, -ārum f.:** Harpies, 3

**hora, -ae f.:** hour, 5

**impetus, -ūs m.:** attack, onset, assault, 9

**instruō, -ere, -ūxī, -uctum:** equip, draw up, 6

**intrō (1):** go into, enter, 7

**libenter:** gladly, willingly, 12

**male:** badly, 1

**nec:** and not, nor, 10

**negōtium, ī n.:** task, business, occupation, 13

**nihil:** nothing, 14

**novitās, -tātis f.:** newness, novelty, 3

**nuntius, -ī m.:** messenger, 12

**opīniō, -iōnis f.:** opinion, reputation, 6

**perterreō, -ēre:** frighten, terrify, 5

**petō, petere, petīvī, petītum:** seek, aim at, 10

**Phīneus, -ī m.:** Phineus, 7

**posteā:** after this, afterwards, 7

**praemium, ī n.:** reward, 5

**promittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum:** send forth, 3

**prōsum, prōdesse, prōfūtī:** profit, benefit, 6

**quantus, -a, -um:** how much, how great, 4

**quīn:** nay (even), (but) that, 12

**rēgia, -ae f.:** palace, 4

**remidum, ī n.:** remedy, cure, 1

**reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertum:** find out, 9

**sciō, -īre, -īvī (ī), -ītus:** know, understand, 9

**simul:** at the same time; at once, together, 10

**sublevō (1):** life up, raise, 1

**suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum:** undertake, 14

**umquam:** ever, 5

**virtūs, -ūtis f.:** valor, manhood, excellence, 10

**volucris, -īs f.:** bird, 3

**Zētēs, -ae m.:** Zetes, 1

1 **male sē habēbat:** was faring poorly;

idiom ‘held itself poorly’

2 **simul atque:** as soon as; ‘same time as’

ēgressōs esse: pf. dep., eōs is acc. subj

3 **gāvisus est:** pf. of semi-deponent gaudeō

**quantum opīniōnem:** how great a  
reputation...; introduces ind. question

4 **nec dubitābat quīn:** he did not doubt

## 65. THE DELIVERANCE OF PHINEUS

- that; quīn often follows “nōn dubitō”      11 **hoc...prōdesse:** *that this was not beneficial*  
5    **quī...**: *to call...*; relative clause of purpose      12 **erant instructi:** *had been equipped*  
      **Eō:** *there;* frequently an adverb, ‘to there’      **ut...**: *so that...*; purpose  
7    **sē...datūrum esse:** *that he...;* fut. inf.      13 **reī novitāte:** *by the novelty of the situation*  
9    **simul ac:** *as soon as;* ‘same time as’ l. 17      14 **rediērunt:** pf. red-eō

## 66. THE SYMPLEGADES

Hōc factō Phīneus, ut prō tantō beneficiō meritam grātiam referret, Iāsonī 1  
demōnstrāvit quā ratiōne Symplēgadēs vitāre posset. Symplēgadēs autem  
duae erant rūpēs ingentī magnitūdine, quae ā Iove positae erant eō  
cōnsiliō, nē quis ad Colchida pervenīret. Hae parvō intervallō in marī  
natābant, et sī quid in medium spatum vēnerat, incredibilī celeritāte 5  
concurrēbant. Postquam igitur ā Phīneō doctus est quid faciendum esset,  
Iāson sublātīs ancorīs nāvem solvit, et lēnī ventō provectus mox ad  
Symplēgadēs appropinquāvit. Tum in prorā stāns columbam quam in  
manū tenēbat ēmīsit. Illa recta via per medium spatum volavit, et  
priusquam rūpēs cōnflīxērunt, incolumis ēvāsit caudā tantum āmissā. 10  
Tum rūpēs utrimque discessērunt; antequam tamen rursus concurrerent,  
Argonautae, bene intellegentēs, omnem spem salūtis in celeritāte positam  
esse, summā vī rēmīs contendērunt et nāvem incolumem perdūxērunt.  
Hōc factō dīs grātiās maximās ēgerunt, quōrum auxiliō ē tantō perīculō  
ereptī essent; omnēs enim sciēbant nōn sine auxiliō deōrum rem tam  
fēlīciter ēvēnisse. 15

- agō, agere, ēgī, āctum:** drive, lead, spend, 13  
**āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum:** lose, let go, 8  
**ancora, ancorae f.:** anchor, 7  
**antequam:** before, 9  
**appropinquō (1):** come near, approach, 8  
**bene:** well, 5  
**beneficiū, -ī n.:** benefit, favor; kindness, 8  
**cauda, -ae f.:** tail, 2  
**celeritās, -tātis f.:** speed, quickness, 7  
**Colchis, -idis f.:** Colchis, 4  
**columba, -ae f.:** pigeon, dove, 1  
**concurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursus:** run together 4  
**confliqō, -ere, -flīxi, -flīctum:** dash together 1  
**contendō, -ere, -ī, -tus:** strive; hasten; fight 11  
**dēmonstrō (1):** to show, demonstrate, 13  
**discēdō, -ere, -ssī, -ssum:** go away, depart, 4  
**doceō, -ēre, -ūi, -ctus:** teach, tell, 9  
**duo, duea, duo:** two, 10  
**ēmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum:** send out, 2  
**ēripiō, -ere, -ūi, reptus:** tear from, rescue, 2  
**ēvadō, -ere, ēvāsī, ēvāsum:** go out, escape, 9  
**ēveniō, -ire:** turn out, happen, 8  
**feliciter:** happily, fortunately, 3  
**grātia, -ae f.:** graditude, favor, thanks, 10  
**incolumis, -e:** inscathed, uninjured, safe, 7  
**incrēdibilis, -e:** incredible, 2  
**intervallum, -ī n.:** interval, distance, 2  
**Iuppiter, Iovis m.:** Jupiter, 8  
**lēnis, lēne:** gentle, 1
- māgnitūdō, -tūdinis f.:** size, greatness, 13  
**maximus, -a, -um:** greatest, 9  
**medius, -a, -um:** middle of, 10  
**meritus, -a, -um:** deserved, due, just, 4  
**nātō (1):** to swim, float, 1  
**parvus, -a, -um:** small, 3  
**perdūcō, -ere, -xī, -ctum:** lead through, 4  
**Phīneus, -ī m.:** Phīneus, 7  
**priusquam:** before than, sooner than, 2  
**prō:** before, in front of, for, 9  
**prōra, -ae f.:** prow, bow, 1  
**provehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectum:** carry forth, 3  
**ratiō, -ōnis f.:** plan, method, means, reason, 2  
**rectus, -a, -um:** direct, straight, 2  
**rēmus, -ī m.:** oar, 4  
**rūpēs, rūpis f.:** rock, cliff, 6  
**rursus:** again, backward, back, 7  
**sciō, -re, -īvī (ī), -tus:** know, understand, 9  
**spatium, -ī n.:** space, span, extent, 6  
**stō (1):** to stand, 8  
**Symplēgadēs, -um f.:** Symplegades, 3  
**tam:** so, so much, so very, such, 8  
**teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum:** to hold, keep 13  
**tollō, tolle, sustulī, sublātum:** raise, lift up 10  
**utrimque:** on both sides, from both sides, 1  
**ventus, -ī m.:** wind, 10  
**via, -ae, f.:** way, road, 4  
**vītō (1):** to avoid, 2  
**volō (1):** to fly, 3

## 66. THE SYMPLEGADES

- 1 **Hōc factō:** ablative abs., common transition  
2 **quā ratiōne:** *by what means*; ind. question  
3 **ingentī magnitūdine:** *of...;* abl. quality  
   eō cōnsiliō, nē: *with this purpose, so that*  
4 **intervallō:** *at a small interval; manner*
- 6 **faciendum esset:** *had to be done; passive*  
   periphrastic (gerundive + sum)  
7 **sublātis ancorīs:** abl. abs., PPP of tollō  
10 **caudā:** *with only the tail lost; abl. abs.*  
14 **ēgrunt:** *gave thanks; idiom, grātiās agō*

## 67. A HEAVY TASK

Brevī intermissō spatiō Argonautae ad flūmen Phasim vēnērunt, quod in finibus Colchōrum erat. Ibi cum nāvem appulissent et in terram ēgressī essent, statim ad rēgem Aeētem sē contulērunt et ab eō postulāvērunt ut vellus aureum sibi trāderetur. Ille cum audīvisset quam ob causam Argonautae vēnissent, īrā commōtus est et diū negābat sē vellus trāditūrum esse. Tandem tamen, quod sciēbat Iāsonem nōn sine auxiliō deōrum hoc negōtium suscēpisse, mutātā sententiā promīsit sē vellus traditūrum, sī Iāsōn labōrēs duōs diffīcillimōs prius perfēcisset; et cum Iāsōn dīxisset sē ad omnia perīcula subeunda parātum esse, quid fierī vellet ostendit. Prīmum iungendī erant duo taurī speciē horribilī, quī 10 flammās ex ōre ēdebat; tum hīs iunctīs ager quīdam arandus erat et dentēs dracōnis serendī. Hīs auditīs Iāsōn etsī rem esse summī perīculī intellegēbat, tamen, nē hanc occāsiōnem reī bene gerendae āmitteret, negōtium suscēpit.

Aeētēs: Aeetes, king of Cochis, 10  
ager, -grī m.: land, field, territory, 11  
āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum: lose, let go, 8  
appellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulī: drive to, 14  
arō, arārē, -āvī: plow, 4  
aureus, -a, -um: golden, 13  
bene: well, 5  
Colchī, -ōrum m.: Colchians, 3  
dēns, dentis m.: tooth, 5  
difficilis, -e: hard, difficult, troublesome, 6  
diū: a long time, long, 13  
dracō, -ōnis m.: dragon, serpent, 7  
duo, duae, duo: two, 10  
ēdō, -ere, ēdīdī, ēdītum: give out, emit, 3  
etsī: even if, although, though, 13  
finis, -is m./f.: end, limit, border, boundary, 12  
fiō, fierī, factus: become, be made, 9  
flamma, -ae f.: flame, fire, torch, love, 1  
horribilis, -e: horrible, dreadful, 11  
intermittō, -ere: interrupt, break off, 5  
īra, īrae f.: anger, 12

- 1 Brevī...spatiō: abl. absolute
- 2 ēgressī essent: plpf. subj. cum-clause
- 3 sē contulērunt: carried themselves; pf. ut...trāderētur: that...; ind. command
- 4 quam ob causam: for what reason
- 5 vēnissent: plpf. subj., ind. question
- 6 trāditūrum esse: fut. inf., sē is acc. subject
- 7 mutātā sententiā: having changed his opinion; “opinion changed,” abl. abs.
- 8 trāditūrum (esse): sē is acc. subject

iungō, -ere, iunxi, -iunctum: to join, 3  
mūtō (1): to change, 1  
negō (1): to deny, say that...not, 3  
negōtium, īī n.: task, business, occupation, 13  
ob: on account of (acc.), 13  
occāsiō, -iōnis f.: chance, opportunity, 6  
ōs, ḍoris n.: face, mouth 3  
ostendō (1): show, display, 6  
perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum: accomplish, 3  
Phāsis, Phāsidiis m.: Phasis, 1  
postulō (1): demand, claim, request, ask, 11  
prius: before, 3  
promittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum: send forth, 3  
sciō, -ire, -īvī (īī), -ītus: know, understand, 9  
sententia, -ae f.: thought, feeling, opinion, 2  
serō, serere, sēvī, satum: to sow, plant, 1  
spatiū, -īī n.: space, span, extent, 6  
subeō, -ire, -īī: to undergo, go up (to), 5  
suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum: undertake, 14  
taurus, -īī m.: bull, 7  
vellus, velleris n.: fleece, 12

- 9 ad...subeunda: for undergoing...; ad + gerundive, employ gerund-gerundive flip: translate as gerund and direct object; subeō
- 10 parātum esse: pf. pass. inf., ind. disc.  
quid...vellet: what he wished to be done; impf. subj. volō, ind. question
- 10 Prīmum: first; adverb

## 67. A HEAVY TASK

- iungendī erant:** *had to be joined; ‘were (going) to be joined,’ passive periphrastic (gerundive + sum) expresses obligation or necessity*  
**speciē horribili:** *of...; abl. of quality*
- 11 **hīs iunctīs:** ablative abs.  
**arandus erat:** see line 12
- 12 **serendī (erant):** see line 12  
**hīs auditīs:** ablative abs.  
**rem esse:** *that...; ind. discourse*  
**summī periculī:** *of...; gen. description*
- 13 **nē...āmitteret:** neg. purpose clause  
**gerendae:** *of carrying out...; gerundive, employ a gerundive-gerund flip*

## 68. THE MAGIC OINTMENT

Medea, regis filia, Iāsonem adamāvit, et ubi audīvit eum tantum 1  
perīculum subitūrum esse, rem aegrē ferēbat. Intellegēbat enim patrem  
suum hunc labōrem propōsuisse eō ipsō consiliō, ut Iāsōn morerētur.  
Quae cum ita essent, Medea, quae summam scientiam medicīnae habēbat,  
hoc cōnsilium iniit. Mediā nocte, insciente pātre, ex urbe ēvāsit, et 5  
postquam in montēs fīnitimōs vēnit, herbās quāsdam carpsit; tum sūcō  
expressō unguentum parāvit quod vī suā corpus aleret nervōsque  
confirmāret. Hōc factō Iāsonī unguentum dedit; praecēpit autem ut eō diē  
quō istī labōrēs conficiendī essent corpus suum et arma mānē oblineret.  
Iason etsī paene omnibus hominibus magnitūdine et vīribus corporis 10  
antecellēbat (vīta enim omnis in venātiōnibus atque in studiō reī militāris  
cōsumēbatur), tamen hoc cōnsilium nōn neglegendum esse censēbat.

**adamō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum:** fall in love, love, 1  
**aegrē:** with difficulty, warily, 4

**alō, -ere, alui, alitus:** support, feed, nourish, 1

**antecellō, -ere:** surpass, excel, 1

**arma, -ōrum n.:** arms, equipment, tools, 6

**carpō, -ere, -sī, -tum:** pluck, seize, 1

**censeō, -ere:** to think, 2

**confirmō (1):** make strong, strengthen, 5

**consumō, -ere, -mpsī, -mptum:** take, spend 9

**etsī:** even if, although, though, 13

**ēvadō, -ere, ēvāsī, ēvāsum:** go out, escape, 9

**exprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum:** press out, 1

**ferō, ferre, tulī, lātūs:** carry, bear, endure, 10

**fīnitimus, -a, -um:** neighboring, bordering, 2

**herba, -ae f.:** plant, grass, 6

**ineō, -ire, -ī, -itum:** go into, enter, 4

**insciēns, -scientis:** unknowing, 2

**iste, ista, istud:** that or those (of yours), 7

**māgnitūdō, -tūdinis f.:** size, greatness, 13

**mānē:** in the morning, 1

2 **subitūrum esse:** fut. inf. sub-eō

**aegrē ferēbat:** bore poorly...

3 **eō...consiliō, ut:** with...purpose, so that...

**morerētur:** impf. of deponent morior

4 **quae cum...essent:** since these things  
were so; i.e. 'as a result'

5 **insciēntē pātre:** abl. absolute, pres. pple

6 **sūcō expressō:** abl. absolute

7 **quod...aleret...confirmāret:** which...;  
impf. subj., relative clause of characteristic  
vī suā: by its own power; abl. means

8 **Hōc factō:** abl. absolute

**praecēpit:** governs an ind. command

**medicīna, -ae f.:** medicine, art of healing, 4

**medius, -a, -um:** middle of, 10

**militāris, -e:** military, warlike, 3

**mons, montis m.:** mountain, mount, 5

**moriō, morī, mortuus sum:** to die, 4

**neglegō, ere, -lēxi, neglēctum:** to neglect, 1

**nervus, -ī m.:** sinew, muscle, 1

**nox, noctis, f.:** night, 7

**oblinō, -ere, -lēvi, -litum:** daub over, smear, 1

**paene:** almost, nearly, 8

**pater, patris, m.:** father, 12

**praecipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum:** order, take, 6

**propōnō, -ere, -sūt, -sítum:** put or set forth, 4

**scientia, -ae f.:** knowledge, wisdom, 6

**studium, -ī n.:** zeal, desire, pursuit, 1

**subeō, -īre, -ītī:** to undergo, go up (to), 5

**sūcus, -ī m.:** juice, sap, moisture, 1

**unguentum, -ī m.:** ointment, 3

**venātiō, -tiōnis f.:** hunting, 1

**vīta, -ae, f.:** life, 9

9 **quō (diē)...:** on which; the second of two  
abl. of time when constructions

**conficiendī essent:** had to be...; 'were  
(going) to be completed' a passive  
periphrastic (gerundive + sum) suggests  
obligation or necessity; here impf. subj.

10 **hominibū:** dat. of compound verb  
**magnitūdine et vīribus:** in...; abl. of  
respect

11 **reī militāris:** of military affairs

12 **neglegendum esse:** see line 3: passive  
periphrastic in ind. disc.; cōnsilium is  
acc. subject, all governed by censēbat

## 69. THE SOWING OF THE DRAGON'S TEETH

Ubi is diēs vēnit quem rēx ad arandum agrum ēdīixerat, Iāsōn ortā lūce cum sociīs ad locum constitūtum sē contulit. Ibi stabulum ingēns repperit, in quō taurī erant inclusī; tum portīs apertīs taurōs in lūcem trāxit, et summā cum difficultāte iugum impōsuit. At Aeētes cum vidēret taurōs nihil contrā Iāsonem valēre, magnopere mirātus est; nesciēbat enim filiam suam auxilium eī dedisse. Tum Iāsōn omnibus aspicientibus agrum arāre coepit, quā in rē tantam diligentiam praebuit ut ante meridiem tōtum opus confēcerit. Hōc factō ad locum ubi rēx sēdēbat adiit et dentēs dracōnis postulāvit; quō ubi accēpit, in agrum quem arāverat magnā cum dīligențiā sparsit. Hōrum autem dentium natūra erat tālis ut in eō locō ubi sēmentēs factae essent virī armātī mīrō quōdam modō gīgnarentur.

- adeō, -īre, -i(v)ī:** go to, approach, 4  
**Aeētēs:** Aeetes, king of Cochis, 10  
**ager, -grī m.:** land, field, territory, 11  
**ante:** before, in front of (acc.); adv. before, 5  
**aperiō, -īre, -uī, -ertus:** open, disclose, 3  
**arō, arāre, -āvī:** plow, 4  
**armō (1):** arm, equip, 4  
**aspiciō, -ere, -spēxi, -spectum:** look at, 1  
**contrā:** against (+ acc.), 7  
**dēns, dentis m.:** tooth, 5  
**difficultās, -tatis f.:** difficulty, 7  
**diligentia, -ae f.:** diligence, attentiveness, 5  
**dracō, -ōnis m.:** dragon, serpent, 7  
**ēdicō, -ere, -dīxī, dictum:** declare, proclaim, 4  
**gīgnō, -ere, genuī, genitum:** bear, produce, 3  
**imponō, -ere, -posuī, -positus:** place on, 7  
**includō, -ere, -ūsī, -ūsum:** close in, shut in, 7  
**iugum, -ī n.:** yoke, 1  
**lūx, lūcis m.:** light, 6  
**meridīēs, -ēī m.:** midday, noon; south, 2

- 1 **ad arandum agrum:** for...; employ a gerundive-gerund flip and translate this gerundive (adj.) as a gerund (noun)  
**ēdīixerat:** had appointed  
**ortā lūce:** abl. abs.; deponent PPP  
3 **portīs apertīs:** abl. absolute; aperiō  
5 **nihil:** not at all; adverbial acc. serves as a strong negative  
6 **filiā...dedisse:** that...had given; eī is

- mīror, -ārī, -ātus:** to wonder, be amazed at, 7  
**mīrus, -a, -um:** wonderful, amazing, 7  
**natūra, -ae. f.:** nature, 9  
**nesciō, -īre, -scīvī, -scītum:** not know, 4  
**nihil:** nothing, 14  
**opus, -eris n.:** work, deed, toil, 9  
**orior, orīrī, ortus sum:** arise, spring up, 5  
**porta, -ae f.:** gate, 7  
**postulō (1):** demand, claim, request, ask, 11  
**praēbeō, -ere, -uī, -itum:** to present, give, 7  
**reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertum:** find out, 9  
**sedeō, -ere, sēdī, sessum:** to sit, 6  
**sēmentis, -is:** seeding, sowing, 1  
**spargō, -ere, sparsī, sparsum:** to sprinkle, 3  
**stabulum, -ī n.:** stable, inclosure, 5  
**tālis, -e:** such, 6  
**taurus, -ī m.:** bull, 7  
**trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractum:** to draw, drag, 6  
**valeō, -ēre, uī:** be strong, fare well, be able, 5

- dat. sg. (is, ea, id) ind. obj  
**omnibus aspicientibus:** abl. abs.  
**quā in rē:** in quā rē; relative adj.  
8 **ut...confēcerit:** that...; result, pf subj.  
**Hoc factō:** abl. abs.  
11 **Hōrum dentum:** nature of these teeth  
**tālis ut:** such that...; result, impf subj.  
12 **mīrō modō:** in a certain amazing way

## 70. A STRANGE CROP

Nōndum tamen Iāsōn tōtum opus confēcerat; imperāverat enim eī 1  
 Aeëtes ut armātōs virōs quī ē dentibus gīgnerentur sōlus  
 interficeret. Postquam igitur omnēs dentēs in agrum sparsit, Iāsōn  
 lassitudine exanimātus quietī sē trādidit, dum virī istī gīgnerentur. 5  
 Paucās horās dormiēbat, sub vesperum tamen ē somnō subitō  
 excitātus rem ita ēvēnisse ut praedictum esset cognōvit; nam in  
 omnibus agrī partibus virī ingentī magnitūdine corporis gladiīs  
 galeīsque armātī mīrum in modum ē terrā oriēbantur. Hōc cognitō  
 Iāsōn cōnsilium quod dedisset Medea nōn ōmittendum esse  
 putābat. Saxum igitur ingēns (ita enim Medea praecēperat) in 10  
 mediōs virōs coniēcit. Illī undique ad locum concurrērunt, et cum  
 quisque sibi id saxum habēre vellet, magna contrōversia orta est.  
 Mox strictīs gladiīs inter sē pugnāre coepērunt, et cum hōc modō  
 plurimī occīsī essent, reliquī vulneribus confectī ā Iāsone nūllō  
 negōtiō interfectī sunt. 15

- Aeëtes:** Aeetes, king of Cochis, 10  
**ager, -grī m.:** land, field, territory, 11  
**armō (1):** arm, equip, 4  
**concurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursus:** run together 4  
**coniciō, -ere, -iēcī:** throw together, throw, take oneself, 13  
**contrōversia, -ae f.:** dispute, controversy, 2  
**dēns, dentis m.:** tooth, 5  
**dormiō, -ire, -ivī:** to sleep, 8  
**ēveniō, -ire:** turn out, happen, 8  
**examīnō (1):** to kill, exhaust, 9  
**excitō (1):** excite, rouse, incite, 8  
**galea, -ae f.:** helmet, 3  
**gīgnō, -ere, genuī, genitum:** bear, produce, 3  
**gladius, -i m.:** sword, 10  
**hora, -ae f.:** hour, 5  
**imperō (1):** order, command, 12  
**inter:** between, among (+ acc.), 10  
**iste, ista, istud:** that or those (of yours), 7  
**lassitūdō, -inis f.:** weariness, 2  
**māgnitūdō, -tūdinīs f.:** size, greatness, 13  
**medius, -a, -um:** middle of, 10

- 1 **eī:** (for) him; dat. obj. if imperāverat  
 2 **ut...interficeret:** ind. command  
 4 **quietī sē trādidit:** gave himself to rest; i.e.  
     he rested  
 5 **paucās hōrās:** for...; acc.of duration

- mīrus, -a, -um:** wonderful, amazing, 7  
**negōtiūm, ī n.:** task, business, occupation, 13  
**nōndum:** not yet, 4  
**occidō, -ere, -cidī, -cīsus:** kill, cut down, 14  
**omittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum:** neglect, omit, 6  
**opus, -eris n.:** work, deed, toil, 9  
**orior, orīrī, ortus sum:** arise, spring up, 5  
**plūrimus, -a, -um:** most, very many, 3  
**praecipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum:** order, take, 6  
**praedicō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictum:** sto predict, 1  
**pugnō (1):** to fight, 4  
**putō (1):** to think, consider, 2  
**que:** and, 14  
**quiēs, quiētis f.:** rest, repose, sleep, 5  
**sōlus, -a, -um:** alone, only, lone, sole, 6  
**somnus, -i m.:** sleep, 14  
**spargō, -ere, sparsī, sparsum:** to sprinkle, 3  
**stringō, -ere, strinxī, strictum:** to draw out, 3  
**sub:** under, 4  
**undique:** from everywhere, from all sides, 7  
**vesper, vesperī m.:** evening, 4  
**vulnus, -eris n.:** wound, blow, 6

- sub:** near  
 6 **ēvēnisse:** had turned out; pf. inf. ēveniō  
     ita...ut...esset: thus as it had been  
     predicted; otherwise indicative, subordinate  
     verbs in ind. disc. become subjunctive

## 70. A STRANGE CROP

- 7 **ingentī magnitūdine**: *of...; abl. quality*  
8 **mīrum in modūm**: *in an amazing way; according to an amazing manner*  
**Hōc cognitō**: abl. abs.  
9 **quod dedisset**: *which...; relative clause of characteristic, plpf. subj*  
**ōmittendum esse**: *had to be...: ‘was (going) to be omitted’ pass. periphrastic in ind. disc. in secondary sequence;*
- cōnsilium is acc. subject  
12 **id saxum**: *this rock; demonstrative adj.*  
**vellet**: impf. subj. volō, (inf. velle)  
13 **strictis gladiis**: abl. abs.  
**hōc modō**: *in...; abl. manner, cum is the adverbial conjunction ‘when’*  
14 **plurimū**: *very many (men); nom. subj.*  
**nūllō negōtiō**: *with no effort; manner*

## 71. THE FLIGHT OF MEDEA

Rēx Aeētēs ubi Iāsonem labōrem prōpositum confēcisse cognōvit, īrā 1  
 graviter commōtus est; id enim per dolum factum esse intellegēbat; nec  
 dubitābat quīn Medea eī auxilium tulisset. Medea autem cum intellegēret  
 sē in magnō fore perīculō sī in rēgiā manēret, fuga salūtem petere  
 constituit. Omnibus rēbus igitur ad fugam parātis mediā nocte, inscente 5  
 pātre, cum frātre Absyrtō ēvāsit, et quam celerrimē ad locum ubi Argō  
 subducta erat sē contulit. Eō cum vēnisset, ad pedēs Iāsonis sē proīēcit, et  
 multīs cum lacrimīs eum obsecrāvit nē in tantō discrīmine mulierem  
 dēsereret quae eī tantum prōfuiisset. Ille quod memoriā tenēbat sē per eius  
 auxilium ē magnō periculō ēvāsse, libenter eam excēpit, et postquam 10  
 causam veniendī audīvit, hortātus est nē patris īram timēret. Prōmīsit  
 autem sē quam prīmum eam in nāvī suā āvectūrum.

**Absyrtus, -ī m.**: Absyrtus, Medea's brother, 2  
**Aeētēs**: Aeetes, king of Cochis, 10

**Argō, -ūs f.**: Argo, 2

**āvehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectum**: carry away, 1

**dēserō, -ere, -uī, -sertum**: to desert, 2

**discrīmen, -crīminis n.**: crisis, peril, 5

**dolus, -ī m.**: trick, deceit, 4

**dubitō (1)**: to hesitate, doubt, 5

**ēvadō, -ere, ēvāsī, ēvāsum**: go out, escape, 9

**excipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptum**: receive, welcome<sup>9</sup>

**ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus**: carry, bear, endure, 10

**frāter, -tris m.**: brother, 5

**fuga, -ae f.**: flight, haste, exile, speed, 6

**hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum**: to encourage, urge, 4

**insciēns, -scientis**: unknowing, 2

**īra, īrae f.**: anger, 12

**īra, īrae f.**: anger, 12

**lacrima, -ae f.**: tear, 10

**libenter**: gladly, willingly, 12

**manēō, -ēre, mansī, --:** to stay, wait, 9

**medius, -a, -um**: middle of, 10

**memoriā, -ae f.**: memory, 4

**mulier, mulieris f.**: woman, 3

**nec**: and not, nor, 10

**nox, noctis, f.**: night, 7

**obsecrō (1)**: beseech, implore, entreat, 5

**pater, patris, m.**: father, 12

**pēs, pedis m.**: foot, 8

**petō, petere, petīvī, petītum**: seek, aim at, 10

**proiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum**: throw forth, 4

**promittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum**: send forth, 3

**propōnō, -ere, -suī, -sītum**: put or set forth, 4

**prōsum, prōdēsse, prōfūī**: profit, benefit, 6

**quīn**: nay (even), (but) that, 12

**rēgia, -ae f.**: palace, 4

**subdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum**: draw up, 2

**teneō, tenērē, tenuī, tentum**: to hold, keep 13

**timeō, -ēre, -uī**: fear, dread, 6

2 **nec dubitābat quīn**: *he did not doubt that*; quīn often follows ‘nōn dubitō’

**tulisset**: plpf. subj. ferō

4 **fore**: *would be*; ~futūrum esse, fut. inf.

5 **omnibus...parātis**: abl. abs.

**inscientē pātre**: abl. abs., pres. pple

6 **quam celerrimē**: *as quickly as possible*

7 **sē contulit**: *carried himself*; pf. conferō

Eō: (*to*) there; adverb

8 **nē...dēsereret**: neg. ind. command

9 **eī tantum prōfuiisset**: *had been so good to him*; ‘had been so much profit to him,’ dat.

interest and inner acc. “so great a benefit”; plpf. subj. prōsum, relative of characteristic

**memoriā tenēbat**: i.e. remembered; ‘in memory’ is in fact an abl. of means

**sē...ēvāsse**: *that he...*; follows tenēbat

10 **excēpit**: *welcomed*; as often, ‘received’

11 **veniendī**: gen. sg. gerund

**hortātus est**: pf. dep. hortor

**nē...timēret**: negative ind. command

12 **sē...āvectūrum (esse)**: *that...would carry away*; fut. inf. (add esse to the pple.)  
**quam prīmum**: *as soon as possible*

## 72. THE SEIZURE OF THE FLEECE

Postrīdiē eius diētā Iāsōn cum sociīs suīs ortā lūce nāvem dēdūxit, et 1  
 tempestātem idōneam nactī ad eum locum rēmīs contendērunt, quō  
 in locō Medea vellus cēlātum esse dēmōnstrābat. Cum eō  
 vēnissent, Iāsōn in terram ēgressus est, et sociīs ad mare relictīs,  
 quī praesidiō nāvī essent, ipse cum Mēdēā in silvās sē contulit. 5  
 Pauca milia passuum per silvam progressus, vellus quod quaerēbat  
 ex arbore suspēnsum vīdit. Id tamen auferre erat summae  
 difficultatis; nōn modō enim locus ipse egregiē et nātūrā et arte erat  
 munītus, sed etiam dracō quīdam speciē terribilī arborem  
 custōdiēbat. Tum Mēdēa, quae, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, 10  
 medicīnae summam scientiam habuit, rānum quem de arbore  
 proximā dēripuerat venēno infēcit. Hōc factō ad locum  
 appropinquāvit, et dracōnem, quī, faucibus apertīs, eius adventum  
 exspectābat, venēnō sparsit; deinde, dum dracō somnō oppressus  
 dormit, Iāsōn vellus aureum de arbore dēripuit et cum Mēdēā quam 15  
 celerrimē pedem rettulit.

**adveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum:** approach, 1  
**aperiō, -ire, -uī, -ertus:** open, disclose, 3  
**appropinquō (1):** come near, approach, 8  
**arbor, -is f.:** tree, 5  
**ars, artis f.:** skill, craft, art, 5  
**auferō, -ferre, abstulī, -latum:** carry away 11  
**aureus, -a, -um:** golden, 13  
**cēlō (1):** hide, conceal, 5  
**contendō, -ere, -ī, -tus:** strive; hasten; fight 11  
**custodiō, -ire, -īvī, -itum:** to guard, 4  
**dēdūcō, -ere:** lead or bring down, launch, 10  
**deinde:** then, thereupon, 8  
**dēmonstrō (1):** to show, demonstrate, 13  
**dēripiō, -ere, dēripuī, -reptum:** tear away, 2  
**difficultas, -tatis f.:** difficulty, 7  
**dormiō, -ire, -īvī:** to sleep, 8  
**dracō, -ōnis m.:** dragon, serpent, 7  
**egregiē:** excellently, 1  
**faucēs, -ium f.:** throat, 2  
**idōneus, -a, -um:** suitable, appropriate, 12  
**inficiō, -ere, -fēci, -fectum:** stain, dye, 4  
**lūx, lūcis m.:** light, 6  
**medicīna, -ae f.:** medicine, art of healing, 4

1 **postrīdiē eius diētā:** the day after that day; abl. time when; gen. sg.  
**ortā lūce:** abl. abs., deponent PPP

**mīlle (pl. mīlia):** thousand, 7  
**muniō, -ire, -īvī, -itum:** to fortify, build, 2  
**nanciscor, nanciscī, nactus:** attain, meet, 7  
**natūra, -ae. f.:** nature, 9  
**opprimō, -ere, -pressī:** to overpower 5  
**orior, orirī, ortus sum:** arise, spring up, 5  
**passus, -ūs:** pace, 7  
**pēs, pedis m.:** foot, 8  
**postrīdiē:** the day after, the next day, 4  
**praesidium, -ii n.:** protection, guard, 3  
**proximus, -a, -um:** nearest, next, 5  
**rāmus, -ī m.:** branch, 1  
**relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictum:** leave behind, 9  
**rēmus, -ī m.:** oar, 4  
**scientia, -ae f.:** knowledge, wisdom, 6  
**silva, -ae f.:** wood, forest, woodland, 7  
**sommus, -ī m.:** sleep, 14  
**spargō, -ere, sparsī, sparsum:** to sprinkle, 3  
**suprā:** above, before, 6  
**suspendō, -ere, -pendī, -pensum:** hang up, 1  
**terribilis, -e:** terrible, dreadful, 5  
**vellus, velleris n.:** fleece, 12  
**venēnum, -ī n.:** poison, 7

2 **nactī:** having attained; pple nanciscor  
**contendērunt:** hastened; ‘strove’  
3 **eō:** to there; see line 1

## 72. THE SEIZURE OF THE FLEECE

- 4 **sociīs...relictīs**: abl. abs.  
5 **praesidiō nāvī essent**: served as guard for  
the ship; ‘for guard for the ship,’ double  
dat. (purpose and interest)  
7 **id...auferre**: to carry it off; subject inf.  
**summae difficultatis**: of...; gen. of  
description is a predicate
- 8 **nōn modō...sed etiam**: not only...but also  
et...et: both...and  
**erat munitus**: munitus erat; plpf. pass.  
12 **infēcit**: infected a branch with poison  
15 **quam celerrimē**: as quickly as possible  
16 **pedem rettulit**: i.e. “returned” referō

### 73. THE RETURN TO THE ARGO

Dum autem ea geruntur, Argonautae, quī ad mare relictī erant, anxiō 1 animō redditum Iāsonis exspectābant; id enim negōtium summī esse periculī intellegēbant. Postquam igitur ad occāsum sōlis frustrā exspectāverunt, de eius salūte dēspērāre cooperunt, nec dubitābant quīn aliquī cāsus accidisset. Quae cum ita essent, mātūrandum sibi censuērunt, 5 ut ducī auxilium ferrent; sed dum proficisci parant, lūmen quoddam subitō conspiciunt mīrum in modum intrā silvās refulgēns, et magnopere mīrātī quae causa esset eius reī ad locum concurrunt. Quōd cum vēnissent, Iāsonī et Mēdēae advenientibus occurrērunt, et vellus aureum lūminis eius causam esse cognōvērunt. Omnī timōre sublātō magnō cum gaudiō 10 ducem suum excēpērunt, et dīs grātiās maximās ēgērunt quod rēs tam feliciter ēvēnisset.

**accidō, -ere, accidī:** to happen, fall (on)to, 8

**adveniō, -ere, -vēnī, -ventum:** approach, 1

**agō, agere, ēgī, āctum:** to act, drive, lead, spend, 13

**aliquī, -qua, -quod:** some, any, definite, 3

**anxius, -a, -um:** anxious, 3

**aureus, -a, -um:** golden, 13

**cāsus, -ūs m.:** misfortune, accident, event, 8

**censeō, -ere:** to think, 2

**concurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursus:** run together 4

**conspiciō, -ere, -ēxī, -ectum:** catch sight of, 3

**dēspērō (1):** to despair, give up, 4

**dubitō (1):** to hesitate, doubt, 5

**dux, ducis m/f.:** leader, guide, chieftain, 5

**ēveniō, -ire:** turn out, happen, 8

**excipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptum:** receive, welcome9

**feliciter:** happily, fortunately, 3

**frustrā:** in vain, for nothing, 13

**gaudium, -ī n.:** gladness, joy, 9

**grātia, -ae f.:** graditude, favor, thanks, 10

**intrā:** within, among (+ acc.), 4

**lūmen, lūminis n.:** light, 3

**maturō (1):** to hasten, ripen, 7

**maximus, -a, -um:** greatest, 9

**mīror, -ārī, -ātus:** to wonder, be amazed at, 7

**mīrus, -a, -um:** wonderful, amazing, 7

**nec:** and not, nor, 10

**negōtium, ī n.:** task, business, occupation, 13

**occāsus, -ūs m.:** fall, destruction, 4

**occurrō, -ere:** run into, meet, attack, 2

**quīn:** nay (even), (but) that, 12

**reditus, -ūs m.:** return, 5

**refulgō, -ere, -fulsī:** flash back, shine, 1

**relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictum:** leave behind, 9

**silva, -ae f.:** wood, forest, woodland, 7

**sōl, sōlis m.:** sun, 10

**tam:** so, so much, so very, such, 8

**tollō, tolle, sustulī, sublātum:** raise, lift up 10

**vellus, velleris n.:** fleece, 12

1 **ea:** *these (things); neuter pl. demonstrative ad: near, at*

**anxiō animō:** *with anxious heart; manner*

2 **id negōtium:** *this task; acc. subj.*

**summī periculī:** *of...; gen. description*

4 **nec dubitābat quīn:** *he did not doubt that; quīn often follows “nōn dubitō”*

5 **aliquī:** *some; nom. sg. adj. modifies cāsus*

**quaē cum...:** *Since these things were so; i.e. ‘as a result,’ common in Cicero*

**mātūrandum (esse) sibi:** *that he had to hurry; ‘(it is) (going) to be hurried by him’ passive periphrastic (gerundive + sum) with dat. of agent: translate in active*

6 **ducī:** *to the leader; dat. ind. obj. dux*

7 **mīrum in modum:** *in an amazing way*  
**refulgēns:** pres. pple, modifies neut. lūmen

8 **mīrātī:** *having wondered; dep. PPP*  
**quaē...eset:** ind. question, impf. subj. sum  
**Quō:** *to where; ‘to which place’*

9 **Iāsonī, Mēdēae:** *dat. of compound verb*  
**advenientibus:** *dat. pl. pres. pple*

10 **omnī...sublātō:** *abl. abs., PPP tollō*  
*‘remove,’ in other instances ‘lifted up’*

11 **excēpērunt:** *welcomed*  
**grātiās ēgērunt:** *gave thanks; idiom, agō*  
**quod...ēvēnisset:** *because it had turned out; plpf. subj. of alleged cause*

## 74. THE PURSUIT

Hīs rēbus gestīs omnēs sine morā nāvem rūrsus concenderunt, et 1  
 sublātīs ancorīs prīmā vigiliā solvērunt; neque enim satis tūtum  
 esse arbitrātī sunt in eō locō manēre. At rēx Aeētēs, quī iam ante  
 inimīcō in eōs fuerat animō, ubi cognōvit filiam suam nōn modō ad  
 Argonautās sē rēcēpisse sed etiam ad vellus auferendum auxilium 5  
 tulisse, hōc dolōre gravius exārsit. Nāvem longam quam celerrimē  
 dēdūcī iussit, et mīlitibus impositīs fugientēs insecūtus est.  
 Argonautae, quī rem in discrīmine esse bene sciēbant, omnibus  
 vīribus rēmīs contendēbant; cum tamen nāvis quā vehēbantur  
 ingentī esset magnitūdine, nōn eādem celeritātē quā Colchī 10  
 prōgredī poterant. Quō factum est ut minimum abesset quīn ā  
 Colchīs sequentibus caperentur, neque enim longius intererat quam  
 quō tēlum adicī posset. At Mēdēa cum vīdisset quō in locō rēs  
 essent, paene omnī spē dēpositā, infandum hoc cōnsilium cēpit.

**absum**, -esse, **āfuī**: to be away, be absent, 7  
**adiciō**, -ere, **-iēcī**, **-iectum**: throw at, hurl, 1  
**Aeētēs**: Aeetes, king of Cochis, 10  
**ancora**, **ancorae f.**: anchor, 7  
**ante**: before, in front of (acc.); adv. before, 5  
**arbitror**, **-ārī**, **-ātus sum**: to judge, think, 11  
**auferō**, **-ferre**, **abstulī**, **-lātum**: carry away 11  
**bene**: well, 5  
**Colchī**, **-ōrum m.**: Colchians, 3  
**Colchis**, **-idis f.**: Colchis, 4  
**conscendō**, **-ere**, **-ndī**, **-nsum**: climb aboard, 6  
**contendō**, **-ere**, **-i**, **-tus**: strive; hasten; fight 11  
**dēdūcō**, **-ere**: lead or bring down, launch, 10  
**dēponō**, **-ere**, **-suī**, **-situm**: put down, deposit 9  
**discrīmen**, **-crīminis n.**: crisis, peril, 5  
**exārdēscō**, **-ere**, **-ārī**, **-ārsum**: catch fire, 2  
**ferō**, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātus**: carry, bear, endure, 10  
**fugiō**, **fugere**, **fūgī**, **--**: to flee, hurry away, 9  
**imponō**, **-ere**, **-posuī**, **-positus**: place on, 7  
**infandus**, **-a**, **-um**: unspeakable, 1  
**inimīcus**, **-a**, **-um**: unfriendly, hostile, 2  
**insequor**, **-sequī**, **-secūtum**: follow upon, 1  
**intersum**, **interesse**, **-fuī**: be between, 1

1 **Hīs...gestīs**: abl. abs., PPP gerō  
 2 **sublātīs ancorīs**: abl. abs., tollō ‘lifted up’  
 3 **manēre**: subject of esse, tūtum is the pred.  
 4 **inimīcō animō**: *of...*; abl. quality  
 5 **sē rēcēpisse**: *had retreated*; idiom  
**ad auferendum**: *for carrying off...*

**longē**: far, far and wide, 6  
**longus**, **-a**, **-um**: long, 4  
**māgnitūdō**, **-tūdinis f.**: size, greatness, 13  
**maneō**, **-ēre**, **mansi**, **--**: to stay, wait, 9  
**mīlēs**, **mīlitis m.**: soldier, 2  
**minimus**, **-a**, **-um**: very little, 1  
**mora**, **-ae f.**: delay, hesitation, hindrance, 14  
**paene**: almost, nearly, 8  
**quīn**: nay (even), (but) that, 12  
**recipiō**, **-ere**, **-cēpī**, **-ceptum**: accept, take  
 back, 8  
**rēmus**, **-i m.**: oar, 4  
**rūrsus**: again, backward, back, 7  
**satis**: enough, sufficient, 6  
**sciō**, **-ire**, **-īvī (īī)**, **-itus**: know, understand, 9  
**sequor**, **-i**, **secūtus**: follow, pursue, attend, 4  
**telum**, **-i n.**: weapon, arrow, spear, 3  
**tollō**, **tolle**, **sustulī**, **sublātum**: raise, lift up 10  
**tutus**, **-a**, **-um**: safe, secure, 3  
**vehō**, **-ere**, **vēxi**, **vectum**: to convey, carry, 5  
**vellus**, **velleris n.**: fleece, 12  
**vigilia**, **-ae f.**: watch, night-watch, 1

6 **gravius**: *more strongly*; comp. adv.  
 7 **militibus impositīs**: abl. abs.  
 9 **vīribus**: *with all their strength*; manner  
**contendēbant**: hastened  
**cum**: since  
**quā**: relative pronoun, abl. means

## 74. THE PURSUIT

- 10 **ingentī magnitudine**: *of...; abl. quality, pred. of esset; 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. i-stem ablative celeritāte*: *with...; abl. manner quā*: *with which; abl. manner*
- 11 **prōgredi**: pres. deponent inf.  
**Quō factum...morerētur**: *because of which it happened that it was not at all far from being captured by the pursuing Colchians; ‘were least away that they...’*
- abl. of cause; the ut-clause is a noun result clause; minimum is adv. acc.
- 12 **Longius intererat quam**: *for it was no farther between than...; comparative*
- 13 **quō tēlum**: *(that) in which, (that) to which posset*: impf. subj. possum + pass. inf.
- 14 **paene omni...dēpositā**: abl. abs.  
**cōsilium cēpit**: *adopted a plan; ‘took up’*

## 75. A FEARFUL EXPEDIENT

Erat in nāvī Argonautārum fīlius quīdam rēgis Aeëtae, nōmine 1  
 Absyrtus, quem, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, Mēdēa ex urbe fugiēns  
 sēcum abdūxerat. Hunc puerum Mēdēa interficere cōstituit eō  
 cōnsiliō, ut membrīs eius in mare coniēctis cursum Colchōrum  
 impedīret; certō enim sciēbat Aeëtem, cum membra fīlī vīdisset, 5  
 nōn longius prōsecutūrum esse. Neque opīniō Mēdēam fefellit,  
 omnia enim ita ēvēnērunt ut spērāverat. Aeëtēs ubi prīmum  
 membra vīdit, ad ea colligenda nāvem tenērī iussit. Dum tamen ea  
 geruntur, Argonautae nōn intermissō remigandī labōre mox ē  
 conspectū hostium auferēbantur, neque prius fugere dēstiterunt 10  
 quam ad flūmen Eridānum pervēnērunt. Aeëtes nihil sibi  
 prōfutūrum esse arbitrātus sī longius prōgressus esset, animō  
 dēmissō domum revertit, ut fīlī corpus ad sepultūram daret.

- abducō, -ere, dūxī, ductum:** to lead away, 1  
**Absyrtus, -ī m.:** Absyrtus, Medea's brother, 2  
**Aeëtēs:** Aeetes, king of Cochis, 10  
**arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum:** to judge, think, 11  
**auferō, -ferre, abstulī, -lātum:** carry away 11  
**certus, -a, -um:** fixed, sure, 11  
**Colchī, -ōrum m.:** Colchians, 3  
**coniciō, -ere, -iēcī:** throw together, throw, take oneself, 13  
**conligō, -ere:** gather, tie together, 1  
**conspectus, -ūs m.:** sight, view, 6  
**cursus, -ūs m.:** course, running, haste, 10  
**dēmittō, -ere, -misi, -missum:** to drop, 3  
**dēmonstrō (1):** to show, demonstrate, 13  
**dēsistō, -ere, -stītī, -stītum:** desist, stop, 5  
**domus, -ūs f.:** house, home, dwelling, 11  
**Ēridanus, -ī m.:** Eridanus, 1  
**ēveniō, -ire:** turn out, happen, 8  
**fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsum:** deceive, fail, 3

- 1 **nōmine:** by name; abl. respect  
 2 **ut:** as; ut + indicative  
**fugiēns:** pres. pple fugiō, -ere  
 3 **eō cōnsiliō:** with this purpose, (namely)  
 so that; precedes purpose cl.  
 4 **membris...coniēctīs:** abl. abs.  
 6 **longius:** farther; comparative adv.  
**opīniō:** expectation  
 7 **ita...ut:** just as; ut + indicative

- fīlius, -ī m.:** son, 10  
**fugīō, fugere, fūgī, --:** to flee, hurry away, 9  
**hostis, -is m./f.:** stranger, enemy, foe, 5  
**impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum:** hinder, impede, 1  
**intermittō, -ere:** interrupt, break off, 5  
**longē:** far, far and wide, 6  
**membrum, -ī n.:** limb, member, 10  
**nihil:** nothing, 14  
**nōmen, nōminis, n.:** name, 12  
**opīniō, -ōnis f.:** opinion, reputation, 6  
**prius:** before, 3  
**prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui:** profit, benefit, 6  
**rēmigō (1):** row, 1  
**revertō, -ere, reversī:** turn back, return, 2  
**sciō, -īre, -īvī (īī), -ītus:** know, understand, 9  
**sepultūra, -ae f.:** burial, 2  
**spērō (1):** hope (for), expect, 5  
**suprā:** above, before, 6  
**teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum:** to hold, keep 13

- prīmum:** first; adverb  
 8 **ad ea colligenda:** for gathering them;  
 employ a gerund-gerundive flip  
 9 **remigandī:** gen. gerund  
 10 **prius...quam:** earlier than, before  
**fugere:** from fleeing; English idiom  
 11 **nihil:** that it would be no profit for him;  
 inner acc. or adv. acc. (not at all), cf. p. 77  
 12 **animō dēmissō:** with dejected heart

## 76. THE BARGAIN WITH PELIAS

Tandem post multa pericula Iāsōn in eundem locum pervenit unde profectus erat. Tum ē nāvī ēgressus ad regem Peliam, quī regnum adhuc obtinēbat, statim sē contulit, et vellere aureō monstrātō ab eō postulāvit ut regnum sibi trāderetur; Peliās enim pollicitus erat, sī Iāsōn vellus rettulisset, sē regnum eī traditūrum. Postquam Iāsōn quid fierī vellet ostendit, Peliās prīmō nihil respondit, sed diū in eādem trīstitiā tacitus permansit; tandem ita locūtus est: “Vidēs mē aetāte iam esse cōfectum, neque dubium est quīn diēs suprēmus mihi appropinquet. Liceat igitur mihi, dum vīvam, hoc rēgnū obtinēre; cum autem tandem dēcesserō, tu mihi succēdēs.” Hāc oratiōne adductus Iāsōn respondit sē id factūrum quod ille rogāasset.

**addūō, -ere, -xī, -ctum:** to lead to, bring, 8

**adhuc:** still, 5

**aetās, aetatis f.:** age, lifetime, time, 4

**appropinquō (1):** come near, approach, 8

**aureus, -a, -um:** golden, 13

**dēcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum:** depart; die, 2

**diū:** a long time, long, 13

**dubius, -a, -um:** doubtful, uncertain, 3

**fīo, fierī, factus:** become, be made, 9

**licet, -ere, -uit:** is allowed, permitted, 5

**loquor, loquī, locūtus sum:** speak, address, 9

**monstrō (1):** to show, demonstrate, 3

**nihil:** nothing, 14

**obtineō, -ere, -uī, -tentum:** hold, maintain, 9

**obtineō, -ere, -uī, -tentum:** hold, maintain, 9

**ōrātio, -ionis f.:** speaking, speech, language, 2

**ostendō (1):** show, display, 6

**Peliās, -ae f.:** Pelias, 14

**permaneō, -ēre, -mansī:** to remain, 1

**polliceor, -cērī, -citus:** promise, proffer, 2

**postulō (1):** demand, claim, request, ask, 11

**quīn:** nay (even), (but) that, 12

**respondeō, -ēre, -dī, -ōnsus:** to answer, 13

**rogō (1):** to ask, 1

**succēdō, -ere, -cessī:** to come up, succeed, 1

**suprēmus, -a, -um:** highest, last, 1

**taceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum:** be silent, 2

**tristitia, -ae f.:** sadness, 1

**tu:** you, 10

**unde:** whence, from which source, 6

**vellus, velleris n.:** fleece, 12

**vīvus, -a, -um:** living, alive, 4

3 **sē contulit:** carried himself, conferō

4 **ut:** that...; ind. command

5 **rettulisset:** if...had brought back; fut. pf. indicate in future-more-vivid

condition made plpf subj in ind. disc.

eī: dat. sg. indirect object

**traditūrum (esse):** fut. inf.; add esse

6 **quid...vellet:** what he wished to be done; impf. subj. volō, ind. question

8 **cōfectum (esse):** have been exhausted;

**neque...quīn:** there is not doubt that...

9 **mihi:** to me; dat. of compound verb

**liceat:** let it be allowed; jussive pres. subj.

**vīvam:** 1<sup>st</sup> sg. pres. subjunctive

10 **dēcesserō:** I depart (from life); fut. pf.

**mihi:** me; dat with compound verb

11 **id...quod:** that which...

**factūrum (esse):** fut. inf. in indirect disc.

**rogā(vi)set:** syncopated plpf subj.

## 77. MAGIC ARTS

Hīs rēbus cognitīs Mēdēa rem aegrē tulit, et rēgnī cupiditatē 1 adducta mortem rēgī per dolum inferre cōstituit. Hōc cōstitutō ad filiās rēgis vēnit atque ita locūta est: “Vidētis pātrem vestrum aetāte iam esse cōfектum neque ad labōrem rēgnandī perferendum satis valēre. Vultisne eum rūrsus iuvenem fierī?” Tum filiae rēgis 5 ita respondērunt: “Num hoc fierī potest? Quis enim umquam ē sene iuvenis factus est?” At Mēdēa respondit: “Mē medicīnae summam habēre scientiam scītis. Nunc igitur vōbīs demonstrābō quō modō haec rēs fierī possit.” Postquam fīnem loquendī fēcit, arietem aetāte iam confectum interfēcit et membra eius in vāse aēneō 10 posuit, atque ignī suppositō in aquam herbās quāsdam infūdit. Tum, dum aqua effervēsceret, carmen magicum cantābat. Mox aries ē vāse exsiluit et, vīribus refectīs, per agrōs currēbat.

**addūcō, -ere, -xī, -ctum:** to lead to, bring, 8  
**aegrē:** with difficulty, wearily, 4  
**aēneus, -a, -um:** of bronze, 3  
**aetās, aetātis f.:** age, lifetime, time, 4  
**ager, -grī m.:** land, field, territory, 11  
**aqua, -ae f.:** water, 11  
**ariēs, -ietis m.:** ram, battering-ram, 2  
**cantō (1):** sing, 1  
**carmen, carminis n.:** song, 2  
**cupiditās, -tatis f.:** desire, passion, 5  
**currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursus:** run, rush, fly, 4  
**dēmonstrō (1):** to show, demonstrate, 13  
**dolus, -ī m.:** trick, deceit, 4  
**effervēscō, -ere, -ferbuī:** to boil up or over, 1  
**exsilio, -ire, -siluī:** leap out or forth, 1  
**ferō, ferre, tuli, latus:** carry, bear, endure, 10  
**finis, -īs m./f.:** end, limit, border, boundary, 12  
**fiō, fierī, factus:** become, be made, 9  
**herba, -ae f.:** plant, grass, 6  
**ignis, ignis, m.:** fire, 9  
**inferō, -ferre, -tuli, -latus:** bring on, wage, 3  
**infundō, -ere, -fudi, fūsum:** pour into, 1  
**iuvenis, -is m.:** youth, young man, 4

- 1 **Hīs...cognitīs:** abl. abs.  
**tulit:** bore poorly; pf. ferō
- 2 **rēgī:** upon the king; dat. of compound verb
- 4 **cōfектum (esse):** see note, line 5  
**ad...perferendum:** for accomplishing...  
**regnandi:** gen. sg. gerund (-ing)

**loquor, loquī, locūtus sum:** speak, address, 9  
**magicus, -a, -um:** magic, 5  
**medicīna, -ae f.:** medicine, art of healing, 4  
**membrum, -ī n.:** limb, member, 10  
**mors, mortis, f.:** death, 9  
**num:** question expecting negative answer, 2  
**nunc:** now, at present, 4  
**pater, patris, m.:** father, 12  
**perferō, -ferre, -tuli, -latus:** bear, betake, 2  
**ponō, ponere, posui, positum:** to place, put, 5  
**reficiō, -ere, fēci, fectum:** renew, make new 2  
**respondeō, -ēre, -dī, -ōnsus:** to answer, 13  
**rūrsus:** again, backward, back, 7  
**satis:** enough, sufficient, 6  
**scientia, -ae f.:** knowledge, wisdom, 6  
**sciō, -re, -ivī (ī), -itus:** know, understand, 9  
**senex, senis m.:** old man, 1  
**supponō, -ere, -suī, -situm:** set beneath, 1  
**umquam:** ever, 5  
**valeō, -ēre, uī:** be strong, fare well, be able, 5  
**vās, vāsis n.:** vessel, 5  
**vester, vestra, vestrum:** your, 2

- 5 **satis valēre:** is not strong enough  
**Vultis:** 2<sup>nd</sup> pl. present volō  
**fierī:** to be made/done; inf. fiō
- 6 **Num:** surely....not?, expects a ‘no’ answer
- 8 **quō modō:** in what way; indirect question
- 13 **vīribus refectīs:** strength recovered; abs.

## 78. A DANGEROUS EXPERIMENT

Dum filiae regis hoc miraculum stupentēs intuentur, Mēdēa ita locuta est: “Vidētis quantum valeat medicīna. Vōs igitur, sī vultis pātrem vestrum in adulēsentiam reducere, id quod fēcī ipsae faciētis. Vōs pātris membra in vās conicite; ego herbās magicās praebēbō.” Quod ubi audītum est, filiae regis cōnsilium quod dedisset Mēdēa nōn ḍmittendum putāvērunt. Pātrem igitur Peliam necāvērunt et membra eius in vās aēneum coniēcērunt; nihil autem dubitābant quīn hoc maximē eī prōfutūrum esset. At rēs omnīnō aliter ēvēnit ac sperāverant, Mēdēa enim nōn eāsdem herbās dedit quibus ipsa ūsa erat. Itaque postquam diū fristrā exspectāvērunt, pātrem suum rē vērā mortuum esse intellēxērunt. Hīs rēbus gestīs Mēdēa sē cum coniuge suō rēgnum acceptūram esse sperābat; sed cīvēs cum intellegerent quō modō Pelias periisset, tantum scelus aegrē tulērunt. Itaque Iāsone et Mēdēā ē regnō expulsīs, Acastum rēgem creāvērunt.

15

**Acastus, -ī m.**: Acastus, 1  
**adulescentia, -ae f.**: youth, 1  
**aegrē**: with difficulty, wearily, 4  
**aēneus, -a, -um**: of bronze, 3  
**aliter**: otherwise, in another way, 3  
**cīvis, -is m/f.**: citizen, fellow citizen, 5  
**conīcio, -ere, -iēcī**: throw together, throw, take oneself, 13  
**coniūnx, -iugis m/f.**: husband, wife, spouse, 1  
**creō (1)**: to create, 2  
**diū**: a long time, long, 13  
**dubitō (1)**: to hesitate, doubt, 5  
**ēveniō, -ire**: turn out, happen, 8  
**expellō, -ere, pulī, pulsum**: drive out, expel 3  
**ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus**: carry, bear, endure, 10  
**frustrā**: in vain, for nothing, 13  
**herba, -ae f.**: plant, grass, 6  
**intueor, -tuērī, -tuitus sum**: look upon, 1  
**Itaque**: and so, 8  
**loquor, loquī, locūtus sum**: speak, address, 9  
**magicus, -a, -um**: magic, 5  
**maximē**: especially, very greatly, 5  
**medicīna, -ae f.**: medicine, art of healing, 4  
**membrum, -ī n.**: limb, member, 10

2 **quantum valeat medicīna**: how strong is...; inner acc. ind. question, pres. subj.  
3 **vultis**: 2<sup>nd</sup> pl. volō

**mīrāculum, -ī n.**: wonder, marvel, miracle, 1  
**mortuus, -a, -um**: dead, 7  
**necō (1)**: to kill, slay, put to death, 9  
**nihil**: nothing, 14  
**omittō, -ere, -misi, -missum**: neglect, omit, 6  
**omnīnō**: altogether, wholly, entirely, 11  
**pater, patris, m.**: father, 12  
**Peliās, -ae f.**: Pelias, 14  
**pereō, -perīre, perī, peritūrum**: to perish, 1  
**praebeō, -ere, -uī, -itum**: to present, give, 7  
**prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui**: profit, benefit, 6  
**putō (1)**: to think, consider, 2  
**quantus, -a, -um**: how much, how great, 4  
**quīn**: nay (even), (but) that, 12  
**reducō, -ere, -xī, -ctus**: lead or bring back, 11  
**scelus, sceleris n.**: wickedness, crime, 4  
**spērō (1)**: hope (for), expect, 5  
**stupeō, -ēre, -uī**: be stunned, be astounded, 1  
**ūtor, ūtī, ūsum sum**: use, employ, enjoy 2  
**valeō, -ēre, uī**: be strong, fare well, be able, 5  
**vās, vāsis n.**: vessel, 5  
**verus, -a, -um**: true, real, 2  
**vester, vestra, vestrum**: your, 2  
**vōs**: you, you all, 3

3 **id quod**: that which...; demonstrative  
4 **conicite**: plural imperative, -iciō from iaciō  
5 **quod**: this; ‘which,’ nom. subject

## 78. A DANGEROUS EXPERIMENT

- quod...Mēdēa: plpf. subj., relative clause of characteristic
- 6 ômittendum (esse): *must be...*: ‘was (going) to be omitted,’ pass. periphrastic in ind. disc.; cōnsilium is acc. subject,
- 8 dubitābant quīn: *they did not at all doubt that; nihil* is an adv. acc. or inner acc. (had no doubt); quīn often follows dubitāre
- prōfutūrum esset: *would be profitable; ‘was going to be profitable,’ periphrastic fut.* (fut pple + sum); impf subj
- 10 quibus: *which; abl. obj. of ūsa est ipsa: (she) herself*
- ūsa est: pf. dep. ūtor, governs abl.
- 11 rē vērā: *in true fact; i.e. actually*
- hīs...gestīs: abl. abs., PPP gerō
- 12 acceptūram esse: *would receive; sē is acc. subj.; fut. inf.*
- 13 quō modō: *in what way; abl. manner*
- periisset: plpf. subj. per-eō, ind. quest
- 14 tulērunt: pf. ferō, again to bear poorly
- Iāsone...expulsīs: abl. abs.

## 79. A FATAL GIFT

Iāsōn et Mēdēa ē Thessaliā expulsī ad urbem Corinthum vēnērunt, 1  
 cuius urbis Creōn quīdam regnum tum obtinebat. Erat autem  
 Creōntī filia ūna, nōmine Glauce. Quam cum vīdisset, Iason  
 cōnstituit Mēdēae uxōrī suae nūntium mittere eō cōnsiliō, ut  
 Glauen in mātrimōnium duceret. At Mēdēa ubi intellēxit quae ille 5  
 in animō habēret, īrā graviter commōta iūre iurandō confirmāvit sē  
 tantam iniūriam ultūram. Hoc igitur cōnsilium cēpit. Vestem  
 parāvit summā arte textam et variīs colōribus infectam; hanc  
 mortiferō quōdam venēnō tinxit, cuius vīs tālis erat ut sī quis eam  
 vestem induisset, corpus eius quasi ignī ūrerētur. Hōc factō vestem 10  
 ad Glauen mīsit; illa autem nihil malī suspicāns dōnum libenter  
 accēpit, et vestem nōvam mōre feminārum statim induit.

**ars, artis f.**: skill, craft, art, 5

**color, colōris m.**: color, 1

**confirmō (1)**: make strong, strengthen, 5

**Corinthus, -ī m.**: Corinth, 1

**Creon, -ontis m.**: Creon, 5

**dōnum, -ī n.**: gift, 6

**ducō, -ere, dūxi, ductus**: lead, draw, bring, 5

**expellō, -ere, pulī, pulsum**: drive out, expel 3

**fēmina, -ae f.**: woman, 3

**Glauce, -ēs f.**: Glause, 4

**ignis, ignis, m.**: fire, 9

**induō, -ere, induī, indūtum**: put on, 8

**inficiō, -ere, -fēci, -fectum**: stain, dye, 4

**iniūria, -ae f.**: wrong, insult, injustice, 2

**īra, īrae f.**: anger, 12

**iurō (1)**: to swear, 2

**iūs, iūris n.**: justice, law, right, 4

**libenter**: gladly, willingly, 12

**malus, -a, -um**: bad, 3

**matrimōnium, -ī n.**: marriage, 6

2 **cuius urbis**: of which city; + regnum

3 **Creōntī**: there was to Creon; ‘Creon had,’ dat. of possession

6 **iūre iurandō**: by sworn oath; ‘by oath (going) to be worn,’ abl. means

7 **ultūrum (esse)**: fut. inf. ulcīscor  
 cēpit: adopted; ‘took up’

8 **summā arte**: with...; abl. manner  
**textam, infectam**: PPP texō, inficiō

**mōs, mōris m.**: custom, manner, law, 6

**mortifer, -fera, -ferum**: death-bearing, 2

**nihil**: nothing, 14

**nōmen, nōminis, n.**: name, 12

**novus, -a, -um**: new, 4

**nūntius, -ī m.**: messenger, 12

**obtineō, -ere, -ui, -tentum**: hold, maintain, 9

**quasi**: as if, 4

**suspicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**: suspect, mistrust, 7

**tālis, -e**: such, 6

**texō, -ere, -ui, textum**: to weave, 1

**Thessalia, -ae f.**: Thessaly, 4

**tingō, -ere, tinxī, tintum**: wet, soak; dye, 1

**ulcīscor, ulcīscī, ultus sum**: to avenge, 2

**ūrō, ūrere, ussī, ustum**: to burn, 1

**uxor, ūxorīs f.**: wife, spouse, 10

**varius, -a, -um**: various, 2

**venēnum, -ī n.**: poison, 7

**vestis, -is f.**: clothing, 12

9 **tālis**: such; nom. predicate of erat

**ut...ūrerētur**: that...burned; result

**sī quis**: if anyone...; quis is indefinite

before sī, nisi, num, and nē

10 **induisset**: plpf. subj.

**ignī**: abl. of means, i-stem 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. noun

**hōc factō**: abl. abs.

11 **nihil malī**: nothing (of) evil; partitive

12 **mōre**: by custom; ‘from the custom’

## 80. MEDEA KILLS HER SONS

Vix vestem induerat Glauce cum dolorem gravem per omnia membra  
sēnsit, et paulō post crūdēlī cruciātū affecta ē vītā excessit. Hīs rēbus  
gestis Mēdēa furōre atque āmentiā impulsa filiōs suōs necāvit; tum  
magnum sibi fore perīculum arbitrāta sī in Thessaliā manēret, ex eā  
regiōne fugere cōstituit. Hōc cōnstitutō Sōlem orāvit ut in tantō perīculō  
auxilium sibi praebēret. Sōl autem hīs precibus commōtus currum mīsit  
cui erant iunctī dracōnēs alīs instructī. Mēdēa nōn omittendam tantam  
occāsiōnem arbitrāta currum ascendit, itaque per āera vecta incolumis ad  
urbem Athēnās pervenit. Iāsōn ipse brevī tempore mīrō modō occīsus est.  
Accidit sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum ut sub umbrā nāvis suaē, quae in  
lītus subducta erat, dormīret. Mox nāvis, quae adhuc ērēcta steterat, in  
eam partem ubi Iāsōn iacēbat subitō dēlāpsa virum īnfēlīcem oppressit.

**accidō, -ere, accidī:** to happen, fall (on)to, 8

**adhuc:** still, 5

**āēr, aēris n.:** air, 7

**afficiō, -ere, -fēcī, fectum:** influence, treat, 13

**āla, -ae f.:** wing, 2

**āmentia, -ae f.:** madness, 2

**arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum:** to judge, think, 11

**ascendō, -ere, -i, -ēnsus:** ascend, mount, 3

**Athenae, -ārum f.:** Athens, 1

**cāsus, -ūs m.:** misfortune, accident, event, 8

**cruciātus, -ūs m.:** torture, 2

**crūdēlis, -e:** cruel, bitter, bloody, 6

**currus, -ūs m.:** chariot, cart, 2

**dēlābor, -lābī, -lapsum:** slip or fall down, 1

**dormiō, -ire, -īvī:** to sleep, 8

**dracō, -ōnis m.:** dragon, serpent, 7

**ērigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rectum:** raise up, lift, 1

**excēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum:** go out, depart, 2

**filius, -ī m.:** son, 10

**fugiō, fugere, fūgī, -:** to flee, hurry away, 9

**furor, -ōris m.:** rage, fury, madness, 4

**Glauce, -ēs f.:** Glauce, 4

**iaceō, -ēre, -ūi:** to lie, lie low, 3

**impellō, -ere, pulī, pulsum:** drive on incite 3

**incolumis, -e:** inscathed, uninjured, safe, 7

**induō, -ere, induī, indūtum:** put on, 8

1 **Glauce:** nom. subject; Greek 1<sup>st</sup> decl.

2 **paulō post:** a little later; abl. of degree  
of difference

**crūdēlī:** abl. i-stem modifies cruciātū

**Hīs...gestis:** abl. abs.

4 **magnum...fore ...perīculum:** that...

would be; ~futūrum esse, ind. disc governed  
by arbitrāta (PPP arbitrō)

**īnfēlīx, -fēlīcis:** unhappy, unfortunate, 2

**instruō, -ere, -ūxī, -uctum:** equip, draw up, 6

**itaque:** and so, 8

**iungō, -ere, iunxī, -iunctum:** to join, 3

**maneō, -ēre, mansī, --:** to stay, wait, 9

**membrum, -ī n.:** limb, member, 10

**mīrus, -a, -um:** wonderful, amazing, 7

**necō (1):** to kill, slay, put to death, 9

**occāsiō, -ōnis f.:** chance, opportunity, 6

**occidō, -ere, -cidī, -cīsus:** kill, cut down, 14

**omittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum:** neglect, omit, 6

**opprimō, -ere, -pressī:** to overpower 5

**ōrō (1):** pray (for), entreat, beseech, 5

**praebēō, -ēre, -ūi, -ītum:** to present, give, 7

**precēs, -um:** prayer, entreaty, 3

**sīve:** whether, or, 6

**sōl, sōlis m.:** sun, 10

**stō (1):** to stand, 8

**sub:** under, 4

**subdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum:** draw up, 2

**Thessalia, -ae f.:** Thessaly, 4

**umbra, -ae f.:** shade, shadow, 1

**vehō, -ere, vēxī, vectum:** to convey, carry, 5

**vestis, -is f.:** clothing, 12

**vīta, -ae, f.:** life, 9

**vix:** with difficulty, with effort, scarcely, 5

**sibi:** reflexive, dat. of interest

**sī...manēret:** fut. pf. ind. subordinate  
verb made subjunctive in ind. disc.

5 **ut...praebēret:** that...; ind. command

7 **cui:** to which...had been joined

**ōmittendam (esse):** must not be omitted

10 **Accidit...ut...dormīret:** it happened  
that...; noun result clause

## 81. HOMEWARD BOUND

Urbem Troiam ā Graecīs decem annōs obsessam esse satis cōnstat; dē 1  
hōc enim bellō Homerūs, maximus poētārum Graecōrum, Iliadem, opus  
nōtissimum, scrīpsit. Troiā tandem per īnsidiās captā, Graecī longō bellō  
fessī domum redīre mātūrāvērunt. Omnibus rēbus igitur ad profectiōnem  
paratīs, nāvēs dēdūxērunt, et tempestātem idōneam nactī magnō cum 5  
gaudiō solvērunt. Erat inter primōs Graecōrum Ulixēs quīdam, vir  
summae virtūtis ac prudentiae, quem dicunt nōnnullī dolum istum  
excōgitāsse quō Troiam captam esse cōnstat. Hic rēgnūm īnsulae Ithacae  
obtinuerat, et paulō antequam cum reliquīs Graecīs ad bellum profectus  
est, puellam formōsissimam, nōmine Pēnelopēn, in mātrīmōnium 10  
dūixerat. Nunc igitur cum iam decem annōs quasi in exsiliō  
consumpsisset, magnā cupiditāte patriae et uxōris videndae ārdēbat.

**antequam:** before, 9

**ardeō, -ere, arsī, arsum:** be on fire, burn, 3

**bellum, -ī, n.:** war, 6

**constō, -stāre, -stīfī, -stītūm:** stand together,  
it is agreed, 6

**consumō, -ere, -mpsī, -mptūm:** take, spend 9

**cupiditās, -tātīs f.:** desire, passion, 5

**decem:** ten, 4

**dēdūcō, -ere:** lead or bring down, launch, 10

**dolus, -ī m.:** trick, deceit, 4

**domus, -ūs f.:** house, home, dwelling, 11

**ducō, -ere, dūxī, dūctūs:** lead, draw, bring, 5

**excōgitō (1):** think out, devise, contrive, 1

**exsilium, -īī n.:** exile, 2

**fessus, -a, -um:** wearied, exhausted, 2

**formōsus, -a, -um:** shapely, beautiful, 2

**gaudium, -īī n.:** gladness, joy, 9

**Graecus, -a, -um:** Greek, 14

**Homerus, ī m.:** Homer, 1

**idōneus, -a, -um:** suitable, appropriate, 12

**Īlias, -adīs f.:** the Iliad, Homer's epic, 1

**insidiae, -ārūm f.:** ambush, 2

**inter:** between, among (+ acc.), 10

**iste, ista, istud:** that or those (of yours), 7

1 **Urbem...obsessam esse:** *that...;* pf.  
pass. inf., subject of impers. cōnstat  
**decem annōs:** *for...;* acc. duration  
**satis cōnstat:** *it is sufficiently agreed;*

2 **opus:** neuter acc. in apposition to Iliadem

3 **Troiā...captā:** abl. abs.

4 **ad...:** *for...;* expressing purpose

5 **nactī:** *having attained;* PPP nancīscor

6 **solvērunt:** *set sail;* 'set free the ship'

7 **prīmōs:** *the leaders;* 'the first (men)'

**Ithaca, -ae f.:** Ithaca, 3

**mātrīmōnium, -īī n.:** marriage, 6

**maturō (1):** to hasten, ripen, 7

**maximus, -a, -um:** greatest, 9

**nancīscor, nancīscī, nactūs:** attain, meet, 7

**nōmen, nōminis, n.:** name, 12

**nōnnūllus, -a, -um:** not none, some, 3

**nōtūs, -a, -um:** known, familiar, 3

**nunc:** now, at present, 4

**obsideō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessūm:** beset, beseech 1

**obtineō, -ere, -uī, -tentūm:** hold, maintain, 9

**opus, -erīs n.:** work, deed, toil, 9

**patria, -ae f.:** fatherland, country, 8

**Pēnelopē, -ēs f.:** Penelope, 1

**poēta, -ae m.:** poet, 4

**profectiō, -tiōnis f.:** departure, start, 3

**prudentiā, -ae f.:** prudence, 1

**quasi:** as if, 4

**satis:** enough, sufficient, 6

**scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptūm:** write, 2

**Troia, -ae f.:** Troy, 9

**uxor, ūxōris f.:** wife, spouse, 10

**virtūs, -ūtīs f.:** valor, manhood, excellence, 10

7 **summae virtūtis:** *of...;* gen. descirption

**quem:** *whom;* acc. subj. of excōgitāsse

8 **excōgitā(vi)sse:** syncopated pf. inf.

**quō:** *by which;* means: masc. follows dolum

**cōnstat:** *it is agreed;* impersonal

9 **paulō:** *little;* abl. of degree of difference

10 **nōmine:** *by name;* abl. of respect

11 **cum...comsumpsisset:** *when...;* plpf. subj.

12 **patriae...videndae:** *for seeing...;* use a  
gerund-gerundive flip

## 82. THE LOTUS-EATERS

Postquam tamen pauca milia passuum ā litōre Troiae progressī sunt, tanta  
tempestās subitō coorta est ut nūlla nāvium cursum tenēre posset, sed  
aliae aliās in partēs disicerentur. Nāvis autem, quā ipse Ulixēs vehēbātur,  
vī tempestātis ad meridiem dēlāta decimō diē ad lītus Libyaē appulsa est.  
Ancorīs iactīs, Ulixēs cōnstituit nōnnullōs ē sociīs in terram expōnere, quī  
aquam ad nāvem referrent et quālis esset natūra eius regiōnis  
cognōscerent. Hī igitur ē nāvī ēgressī imperāta facere parābant. Dum  
tamen fontem quaerunt, quibusdam ex incolīs obviam factū ab eīs hospitiō  
acceptī sunt. Accidit autem ut maior pars victus eōrum hominum in mīrō  
quōdam fructū quem ‘lōtum’ appellābant consisteret. Quam cum Graecī  
gustāssent, patriae et sociōrum statim oblītī confirmāvērunt sē semper in  
eā terrā mansūrōs, ut dulcī illō cibō in perpetuum vēserentur.

**accidō, -ere, accidī:** to happen, fall (on)to, 8  
**alius, -a, -ud:** other, another, else, 9  
**ancora, ancorae f.:** anchor, 7  
**appellō (1):** call (by name), name, 12  
**appellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulīs:** drive to, 14  
**aqua, -ae f.:** water, 11  
**cibus, -ī m.:** food, 5  
**confirmō (1):** make strong, strengthen, 5  
**consistō, -ere, -stītī, -stītūm:** stand still, 1  
**coōrior, -orīrī, -ortus sum:** to arise, 4  
**cursus, -ūs m.:** course, running, haste, 10  
**decimus, -a, -um:** tenth, 1  
**dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātūm:** carry off, 1  
**disiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectūm:** scatter, 1  
**dulcis, -e:** sweet, dear, fresh, 2  
**expōnō, -ere, -suī, -sītūm:** set out, explain 7  
**fons, fontis m.:** origin, fount, source, 3  
**frūctus, -ūs m.:** enjoyment, fruit, 1  
**Graecus, -a, -um:** Greek, 14  
**gustō (1):** taste, 2  
**hospitium, ī n.:** hospitality, 5  
**iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactūm:** throw, cast, 1

1 **mīlia passuum:** for...miles; acc. of extent  
 2 **ut...posset:** that...were able; result  
 4 **vī:** irreg. abl. of means, vīs  
 5 **quī:** who might...; relative of purpose  
 6 **quālis..regiōnis:** what.; ind. question  
 7 **imperāta:** orders; ‘things ordered,’ PPP  
 8 **quibusdam..obviam factū:** put in the way of  
some from the inhabitants; PPP faciō  
**hospitiō:** with hospitality; abl. manner

**imperō (1):** order, command, 12  
**incola, -ae m.:** inhabitant, 7  
**Libya, -ae f.:** Libya, 3  
**lōtus, -ī f.:** lotus, 1  
**māior, māius:** greater, larger; older, 1  
**maneō, -ere, mansī, --:** to stay, wait, 9  
**meridiēs, -ēi m.:** midday, noon; south, 2  
**mille (pl. mīlia):** thousand, 7  
**mīrus, -a, -um:** wonderful, amazing, 7  
**natūra, -ae. f.:** nature, 9  
**nōnnullus, -a, -um:** not none, some, 3  
**oblītūs, -a, -um:** forgetful, unmindful, 1  
**obviam:** in the way of, opposite to (+ dat.) 3  
**patria, -ae f.:** fatherland, country, 8  
**perpetuus, -a, -um:** perpetual, everlasting, 1  
**qualis, -e:** of what sort?, 1  
**semper:** always, ever, forever, 2  
**Troia, -ae f.:** Troy, 9  
**vehō, -ere, vēxī, vectūm:** to convey, carry, 5  
**vescor, vescī:** to feed on, eat (+ abl.) 3  
**vincō, -ere, vīcī, victūm:** conquer overcome 1

9 **accidit:** it happened that; noun result clause  
**eōrum hominū:** of those men; with pars  
in...consisteret: depended on; ‘consists on’  
 11 **gustā(v)issent:** sycopated plpf. subj.  
**oblītū:** having forgotten; + gen., PPP dep.  
**sē...mansūrōs (esse):** that...; fut. inf.  
 12 **ut...vēserentur:** might eat; purpose  
clause, vēscor governs an abl. object  
**duleī:** ablative sg., i-stem 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. adj.

### 83. THE RESCUE

Ulixēs cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum exspectāsset, veritus nē 1  
 sociī suī in perīculō versārentur, nōnnullōs ē reliquīs mīsit, ut quae  
 causa esset morae cognōscerent. Hī igitur in terram expositī ad  
 vicum quī non longē aberat sē contulerunt; quō cum vēnissent, 5  
 sociōs suōs quasi vīnō ēbriōs repperērunt. Tum ubi causam  
 veniendī docuērunt, eīs persuādere cōnābantur ut sēcum ad nāvem  
 redīrent. Illī tamen resistere ac manū sē defendere coepērunt, saepe  
 clamitantēs sē numquam ex eō locō abitūrōs. Quae cum ita essent, 10  
 nuntiī rē infectā ad Ulixem rediērunt. Hīs rēbus cognitīs ipse cum  
 omnibus quī in nāvī relicti erant ad locum vēnit; et sociōs suōs  
 frustrā hortātus ut suā sponte redīrent, manibus eōrum post terga  
 vinctīs invitōs ad nāvem reportāvit. Tum ancorīs sublātīs quam  
 celerrimē ē portū solvit.

**absum**, -esse, **āfūī**: to be away, be absent, 7  
**ancora**, **ancorae** f.: anchor, 7  
**clamitō** (1): call out, 1  
**cōnor**, **cōnārī**, **cōnātūs sum**: to try, attempt, 7  
**dēfendō**, **dēfendere**, -nsī, -nsum: to defend, 1  
**doceō**, -ere, -ūī, -ctus: teach, tell, 9  
**ēbrius**, -a, -um: drunk, inebriated, 1  
**expōnō**, -ere, -suī, -sītūm: set out, explain 7  
**frustrā**: in vain, for nothing, 13  
**hora**, -ae f.: hour, 5  
**hortor**, -ārī, -ātūs sum: to encourage, urge, 4  
**inficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum: stain, dye, 4  
**invītūs**, -a, -um: unwilling, 2  
**longē**: far, far and wide, 6  
**mora**, -ae f.: delay, hesitation, hindrance, 14  
**nōnnūllus**, -a, -um: not none, some, 3  
**numquam**: never, at no time, 4  
**nuntius**, -īī m.: messenger, 12

1 **ad vesperem**: til evening

**exspectā(v)is**set: plpf. subj., see line 4

**veritus**: having feared lest; + fearing clause

2 **ut...cognōscerent**: he might learn; purpose  
**quae...morae**: what was...; ind. question

4 **longē**: far

**sē consulērunt**: carried themselves; went

**quō**: (to) there; 'to where'

6 **veniendī**: gen. sg. gerund (-ing)

**persuādere**: to persuade (dat) that..;

governs dat. i.o. and ind. command

**persuādeō**, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum: persuade, 9

**portus**, -ūs m.: harbort, port, 3

**quasi**: as if, 4

**relinquō**, -ere, -līquī, -līctum: leave behind, 9

**reperiō**, -īre, **repperī**, **repertūm**: find out, 9

**reportō** (1): to carry back, bring back, 1

**resistō**, -ere, -stītī: resist, oppose; stand, 2

**saepe**: often, 1

**septimus**, -a, -um: seventh, 2

**sponte**: of one's own will, voluntarily, 2

**tergum**, -ī n.: back, 8

**tollō**, **tolle**, **sustulī**, **sublātūm**: raise, lift up 10

**vereor**, -ērī, -itus: be afraid, fear; revere, 5

**versor** (1): be engaged, move about, live, 3

**vesper**, **vesperī** m.: evening, 4

**vīcus**, -ī m.: village, 1

**vincīō**, -īre, **vīnxī**, **vīncetus**: bind, tie, 4

7 **redīrent**: impf. subj. red-eō

**manū**: by hand; i.e. by fighting

8 **clāmitantēs**: pres. pple

**abitūrōs** (esse): fut. inf. abeō in ind. disc.

**quae cum...es**set: Since these things were so; 'as a result,' common in Cicero

11 **ut redīrent**: that they return; ind command

**suā sponte**: by their own will

**post**: behind

12 **ancorīs sublātīs**: abl. abs., PPP tollō

**quam celerrimē**: as fast as possible

## 84. THE ONE-EYED GIANT

Postquam eā tōtā nocte rēmīs contendērunt, postrīdiē ad terram 1  
ignōtam nāvem appulērunt. Tum, quod natūram eius regiōnis  
ignorābat, ipse Ulixēs cum duodecim ē sociīs in terram ēgressus  
loca explorāre cōnstituit. Paulum ā lītore progressī ad spēluncam  
ingentem pervēnērunt, quam habitārī sēnsērunt; eius enim 5  
introitum et natūrā locī et manū munītum esse animadvertiserunt.  
Mox, etsī intellegēbant sē nōn sine perīculō id factūrōs, spēluncam  
intrāvērunt; quod cum fēcissent, magnam cōpiam lactis in vāsīs  
ingentibus condītam invēnērunt. Dum tamen mīrantur quis in eā  
sēde habitāret, sonitum terribile audīvērunt, et oculīs ad portam 10  
tortīs mōnstrum horribile vīdērunt, hūmānā quidem speciē et  
figūrā, sed ingentī magnitūdine corporis. Cum autem  
animadvertisserint mōnstrum ūnum oculum tantum habēre in mediā  
fronte positum, intellexērunt hunc esse ūnum ē Cyclōpibus, dē  
quibus fāmam iam accēperant. 15

**animadvertisō, -ere:** turn mind to, notice, 6  
**appellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsī:** drive to, 14  
**condō, ere, condidī, -ditum:** found, store up 2  
**contendō, -ere, -ī, -tus:** strive; hasten; fight 11  
**copia, -ae f.:** abundance, supply; troops, 10  
**Cyclōps, Cyclōpis m.:** Cyclops, 7  
**duodecim:** twelve, 6  
**etsī:** even if, although, though, 13  
**explorō (1):** search out, explore, 2  
**fāma, -ae f.:** fame, reputation, report, rumor 7  
**figūra, -ae f.:** form, shape, 1  
**frōns, frontis f.:** forehead, 1  
**horribilis, -e:** horrible, dreadful, 11  
**hūmānus, -a, -um:** cultured, refined, 4  
**ignōrō (1):** not know, be ignorant, 5  
**intrō (1):** go into, enter, 7  
**introitus, -ūs m.:** entrance, 6

4 **Paulum:** *a little*; adv. acc.

progressī: dep. PPP progredior

5 **quam:** *which*; acc. subj. of habitārī

**eius:** *its*; i.e. the cave's

6 **introitum..muniūtum esse:** *that...*; ind. disc.

7 **sē...factūrōs (esse):** *would do*; fut. inf.

8 **quod:** *this*; ‘*which*’ object of fēcissent

9 **condītam:** *stored up*; PPP or pf. pass. inf.

(add esse) in ind. discourse

**lāc, lactis n.:** milk, 1  
**māgnitūdō, -tūdinis f.:** size, greatness, 13  
**medius, -a, -um:** middle of, 10  
**mīror, -ārī, -ātus:** to wonder, be amazed at, 7  
**muniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum:** to fortify, build, 2  
**natūra, -ae f.:** nature, 9  
**nox, noctis, f.:** night, 7  
**oculus, -ī, m.:** eye, 7  
**porta, -ae f.:** gate, 7  
**postrīdiē:** the day after, the next day, 4  
**rēmus, -ī m.:** oar, 4  
**sēdes, sēdis f.:** seat; abode, home, 5  
**sonitus, -ī m.:** sound, noise, clang, 1  
**terribilis, -e:** terrible, dreadful, 5  
**torqueō, -ēre, torsī, tortum:** to twist, turn, 1  
**tōtus -a, -um:** whole, entire, 14  
**vās, vāsis n.:** vessel, 5

10 **quis:** *wonder who...*; ind. quest., impf. subj.

**oculīs...tortīs:** abl. abs., PPP torqueō

11 **hūmānā...figūrā:** *of...*; abl. of quality

12 **ingentī magnitūdine:** *of...*; abl. of quality

13 **mōnstrum...habēre:** ind. disc.

**tantum:** *only*; an adverb

14 **positum:** *placed*; modifies oculum

**hunc:** *that this...*; acc. subject

**dē quibus:** *about whom*

## 85. THE GIANT'S SUPPER

Cyclōpēs autem pāstōrēs erant quīdam quī īnsulam Siciliam et praecipuē 1  
montem Aetnam incolēbant; ibi enim Volcānus, praeses fabrōrum et ignis  
inventor, cuius servī Cyclōpēs erant, officīnam suam habēbat.

Graecī igitur simul ac mōnstrum vīdērunt, terrōre paene exanimātī in 5  
interiōrem partem spēluncae refūgērunt et sē ibi abdere cōnābantur.  
Polyphēmus autem (sīc enim Cyclōps appellābatur) pecus suum in  
spēluncam compulit; deinde, cum saxō ingentī portam obstrūxisset,  
ignem in mediā spēluncā fēcit. Hōc factō, oculō omnia perlūstrabat, et 10  
cum sēnsisset hominēs in interiōre parte spēluncae esse abditōs, magnā  
vōce exclāmāvit: "Quī hominēs estis? Mercātōrēs an latrōnēs?" Tum 10  
Ulixēs respondit sē neque mercātōrēs esse neque praedandī causā  
vēnisse; sed ā Troiā redeuntēs vī tempestātum ā rectō cursū dēpulsōs  
esse. Ōrāvit etiam ut sibi sine iniūriā abīre liceret. Tum Polyphēmus 15  
quaesivit ubi esset nāvis quā vectī essent; sed Ulixēs, cum sibi maximē  
praecavendum esse bene intellegereret, respondit nāvem suam in rūpīs  
coniectam omnīnō fractam esse. Polyphemus autem nūllō responsō datō  
duo ē sociīs manū corripuit, et membrīs eōrum divulsīs carnem devōrāre  
coepit.

**abdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus:** to hide, put away, 3  
**abeō, -ire, -iī, -itus:** go away, go off, depart, 6  
**Aetna, -ae f.:** Aetna, 1  
**an:** or (in questions), 1  
**appellō (1):** call (by name), name, 12  
**bene:** well, 5  
**carō, carnis f.:** flesh, meat, 4  
**compellō, -ere, -puli:** drive together, 3  
**conicō, -ere, -iēcī:** throw together, throw, take oneself, 13  
**cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum:** to try, attempt, 7  
**corripiō, -ere, -ui, -reptus:** snatch (up), 6  
**cursus, -ūs m.:** course, running, haste, 10  
**Cyclōps, Cyclōpis m.:** Cyclops, 7  
**deinde:** then, thereupon, 8  
**dēpellō, -ere, -puli, -pulsum:** drive away, drive off, 3  
**dēvorō (1):** swallow down, devour, 4  
**divellō, -ere, -velli, -vulsum:** tear apart, 1  
**examīnō (1):** to kill, exhaust, 9  
**exclāmō (1):** cry out, 3  
**faber, fabrī m.:** smith, engineer, 2  
**frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctus:** break, shatter, 1  
**ignis, ignis, m.:** fire, 9  
**incolō, -ere, -ui:** inhabit, 4  
**iniūria, -ae f.:** wrong, insult, injustice, 2

**interior, -ius:** interior, 3  
**inventor, -oris m.:** inventor, discoverer, 1  
**inveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum:** come upon, find, 8  
**latrō, -onis m.:** robber, 1  
**licet, -ere, -uit:** is allowed, permitted, 5  
**maximē:** especially, very greatly, 5  
**medius, -a, -um:** middle of, 10  
**membrum, -ī n.:** limb, member, 10  
**mercātor, -ōris m.:** trader, merchant, 3  
**mons, montis m.:** mountain, mount, 5  
**obstruō, -ere, -ūxi, -ūctum:** block, close off 4  
**oculus, -ī, m.:** eye, 7  
**officina, -ae f.:** workshop, shop, factory, 1  
**omnīnō:** altogether, wholely, entirely, 11  
**ōrō (1):** pray (for), entreat, beseech, 5  
**paene:** almost, nearly, 8  
**pastor, pastoris m.:** shepherd, 2  
**pecus, pecoris n.:** herd, flock, 4  
**perlustrō (1):** look over, examine, 2  
**porta, -ae f.:** gate, 7  
**praecaveō, -ere, -cāvī, -cautum:** take precautions, guard against, 1:  
**praecipuē:** especially, 2  
**praedor, -ārī, -ātus sum:** plunder, 1  
**praeses, praesidis m.:** protector, 1

## 85. THE GIANT'S SUPPER

rectus, -a, -um: direct, straight, 2  
refugiō, -ere, -fūgī: flee back, 5  
respondeō, -ēre, -dī, -ōnsus: to answer, 13  
rūpēs, rūpis f.: rock, cliff, 6  
servus, -ī, m.: slave, 2  
sīc: thus, in this way, 2  
Sicilia, -ae f.: Sicily, 1

- 2 **praeſes...inventor**: nom. appositives  
4 **simul ac**: *as soon as; 'the same time as'*  
**exanīmātī**: *having been overcome*  
7 **cum...obstruxisset**: *after...; plpf. subj*  
**saxō ingentī**: abl. means, i-stem abl.  
8 **Hōc factō**: abl. abs.  
9 **hominēs...esse abditōs**: *that...had been hidden*; pf. pass. inf. in ind. disc.  
**magnā voce**: *with a loud...; abl. manner*  
10 **Quī hominēs**: *what (sort of) people*;  
interrogative adj.  
**an**: *or*  
11 **sē...esse**: *that they were*; ind. disc.  
**neque...neque**: *neither...nor*  
**praedandī**: gen. gerund (-ing) object  
of the prep. causā, “for the sake of”

**simul**: at the same time; at once, together, 10  
**terror, terrōris m.**: terror, fright, 4  
**Troia, -ae f.**: Troy, 9  
**vehō, -ere, vēxī, vectum**: to convey, carry, 5  
**Volcānus, -ī m.**: Vulcan, 13  
**vōx, vōcis, f.**: voice, 9

- 12 **redeuntēs**: pres. pple red-eō  
**vī**: irregular abl. means, vīs  
**dēpulsōs esse**: pf. pass. inf. dēpellō  
13 **ut...liceret**: *that it be allowed*; indirect  
command + dat. of interest  
14 **ubi...nāvis**: ind. question, impf. subj.  
**quā vectī essent**: *by which...; relative clause of characteristic*, pf. pass. subj.  
15 **praecavendum esse**: *that he had to beware*; ‘it had to be guarded by him’  
passive periphrastic (gerundive + sum)  
governs a dat. of agent (sibi)  
16 **coniectam**: PPP coniciō  
**fractam esse**: fem. nāvem is acc. subj.  
**nūllō...datō**: abl. abs., PPP dō  
17 **membrīs...divulsīs**: abl. abs.

## 86. A DESPERATE SITUATION

Dum haec geruntur, Graecōrum animōs tantus terror occupāvit ut nē 1  
vōcem quidem ēdere possent, sed omnī spē salūtis dēpositā mortem  
praesentem exspectārent. Polyphēmus, postquam famēs hāc tam horribilī  
cenā depulsa est, humī prostrātus somnō sē dedit. Quod cum vīdisset 5  
Ulixēs, tantam occāsiōnem reī gerendae nōn ūmittendam arbitrātus,  
pectus mōnstrī gladiō trānsfigere voluit. Cum tamen nihil temere  
agendum exīstīmāret, cōnstituit explorāre, antequam hoc faceret, quā  
ratiōne ex spēluncā evadere possent. At cum saxum animadvertisset quō 10  
introitus obstructus erat, nihil sibi profutūrum intellēxit sī Polyphēmum  
interfēcisset. Tanta enim erat eius saxī magnitūdō ut nē ā decem quidem  
hominibus āmovērī posset. Quae cum ita essent, Ulixēs hōc cōnātū  
dēstitut et ad sociōs rediit; quī cum intellēxissent quō in locō rēs essent, 15  
nūllā spē salūtis oblātā dē fortūnīs suīs dēsperāre coepērunt. Ille tamen nē  
animōs dēmitterent vehementer hortātus est; dēmōnstrāvit sē iam anteā ē  
multīs et magnīs periculīs ēvāsisse, neque dubium esse quīn in tantō  
discrīmine dī auxilium latūrī essent.

**agō, agere, ēgī, āctum:** drive, lead, spend, 13  
**āmoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum:** move away, 5  
**animadvertō, -ere:** turn mind to, notice, 6  
**antea:** before, earlier, formerly, previously, 7  
**antequam:** before, 9  
**arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum:** to judge, think, 11  
**cēna, -ae f.:** dinner, 5  
**cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum:** to try, attempt, 7  
**decem:** ten, 4  
**dēmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum:** to drop, 3  
**dēmōnstrāvit**  
**dēpellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum:** drive away,  
drive off, 3  
**dēponō, -ere, -suī, -situm:** put down, deposit9  
**dēsistō, -ere, -stītī, -stītum:** desist, stop, 5  
**dēspērō (1):** to despair, give up, 4  
**discrīmen, -crīminis n.:** crisis, peril, 5  
**dubius, -a, -um:** doubtful, uncertain, 3  
**ēdō, -ere, ēdīdī, ēditum:** give out, put forth, 3  
**ēvadō, -ere, ēvāsī, ēvāsum:** go out, escape 9  
**existimō (1):** judge, consider, regard, think, 2  
**explorō (1):** search out, explore, 2  
**famēs, -is f.:** hunger, 3  
**ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus:** carry, bear, endure, 10  
**fortūna, -ae f.:** fortune, chance, luck, 3  
**gladius, -ī m.:** sword, 10  
**Graecus, -a, -um:** Greek, 14

**horribilis, -e:** horrible, dreadful, 11  
**hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum:** to encourage, urge, 4  
**humī:** on the ground, 2  
**introitus, -ūs m.:** entrance, 6  
**māgnitūdō, -tūdinis f.:** size, greatness, 13  
**mors, mortis, f.:** death, 9  
**nihil:** nothing, 14  
**obstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctum:** build  
against, block, 4  
**occāsiō, -iōnis f.:** chance, opportunity, 6  
**occupō (1):** occupy, seize, 8  
**offerō, -ferre, -tulī, oblātum:** offer, present 5  
**omittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum:** neglect, omit, 6  
**pectus, pectoris n.:** breast, chest, heart, 3  
**praeſēns, -sentis:** present, 1  
**prosternō, -ere, -strāvī, -ātum:** to lay out, 3  
**prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui:** profit, benefit, 6  
**quidem:** indeed, in fact, assuredly, certainly, 8  
**quīn:** nay (even), (but) that, 12  
**ratiō, -ōnis f.:** plan, method, means, reason, 2  
**somnus, -ī m.:** sleep, 14  
**tam:** so, so much, so very, such, 8  
**temerē:** rashly, 1  
**terror, terrōris m.:** terror, fright, 4  
**trānsfigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixum:** pierce, 4  
**vehementer:** strongly, violently, ardently, 11  
**vōx, vōcis, f.:** voice, 9

## 86. A DESPERATE SITUATION

- 1 **ut...exspectarent**: *that...; result*  
**nē...quidem**: *not even*
- 2 **omnī spē...dēpositā**: abl. abs.
- 4 **humī**: *on the ground*, locative
- somnō...dedit**: *gave himself to sleep*
- quod**: *this; ‘which,’ d.o. of vīdisset*
- 5 **gerendae**: *of carrying out this matter*  
  **ōmittendum (esse)**: *had to be omitted;*  
  pass. periphrastic in secondary sequence
- 6 **nihil...agendum (esse)**: *that*; cf. l. 15
- 9 **prōfutūrum (esse)**: *there would be no benefit to him*; adv. acc. or inner acc.
- 10 **nē...quidem**: *not even by ten men*
- 11 **hōc cōnātū**: *from...; abl. of separation*
- 13 **nē...dēmitterent**: neg. ind. command
- 14 **animōs**: *courage*; as often, in the plural  
  **sē...ēvāsisse**: *that they had escaped*; pf.
- 15 **neque...quīn**: *there is not a doubt that...*
- 16 **dī**: *the gods*; **dēī**, nom. pl.  
  **latūrī essent**: plpf. pass. subj. ferō

## 87. A PLAN FOR VENGEANCE

Ortā luce Polyphēmus iam ē somnō excitātus idem quod hesternō 1  
diē fēcit; correptīs enim duōbus ē reliquīs virīs carnem eōrum sine  
morā devorāvit. Tum, cum saxum āmovisset, ipse cum pecore suō  
ex spēluncā progressus est; quod cum Graecī viderent, magnam in  
spem sē post paulum ēvāsūrōs vēnērunt. Mox tamen ab hāc spē 5  
repulsī sunt; nam Polyphēmus, postquam omnēs ovēs exiērunt,  
saxum in locum restituit. Reliquī omnī spē salūtis dēpositā lamentīs  
lacrimīsque sē dedērunt; Ulixēs vērō, quī, ut suprā  
dēmōstrāvimus, vir magnī fuit cōsiliī, etsī intellegēbat rem in  
discrimine esse, nōndum omnīnō desperābat. Tandem, postquam 10  
diū haec tōtō animō cogitāvit, hoc cōsilium cēpit. Ē lignīs quae in  
spēluncā rēposita erant palum magnum dēlēgit. Hunc summā cum  
dīligentiā praeacutum fēcit; tum, postquam sociīs quid fierī vellet  
ostendit, redītum Polyphemī exspectābat.

**āmoveō, -ere, -mōvī, -mōtum:** move away, 5  
carō, carnis f.: flesh, meat, 4

**corripiō, -ere, -uī, -reptus:** snatch (up), 6  
**dēlīgō, -ere, -lēgī, -lectum:** choose, select, 6  
**dēmonstrō (1):** to show, demonstrate, 13

**dēponō, -ere, -suī, -sิตum:** put down or aside 9

**dēspērō (1):** to despair, give up, 4

**dēvorō (1):** swallow down, devour, 4

**diligentia, -ae f.:** diligence, attentiveness, 5

**discrīmen, -crīminis n.:** crisis, peril, 5

**diū:** a long time, long, 13

**duo, duae, duo:** two, 10

**etsī:** even if, although, though, 13

**ēvadō, -ere, ēvāsī, ēvāsum:** go out, escape, 9

**excitō (1):** excite, rouse, incite, 8

**exēō, -ire, -iī, -itus:** go out, 5

**fiō, fierī, factus:** become, be made, 9

**hesternus, -a, -um:** of yesterday, 1

**lacrima, -ae f.:** tear, 10

**lamenta, -ōrum n.:** lamentation, 1

5   **sē...ēvāsūrōs (esse):** (namely) that...;  
fut. inf. in apposition to spem, ‘hope’  
**post paulum:** a little later; adverbs  
7   **omnī...dēpositā:** abl. abs.  
**lamentī lacrimīsque:** to...; dat. i.o.

8   **vērō:** in truth, truly; adv., in contrast  
**ut:** as...; common for ut + indicative

**lignum, -ī n.:** wood, 4

**lūx, lūcis m.:** light, 6

**mora, -ae f.:** delay, hesitation, hindrance, 14

**nam:** for, 6

**nondum:** not yet, 4

**omnīnō:** altogether, wholly, entirely, 11

**orior, orīrī, ortus sum:** arise, spring up, 5

**ostendō (1):** show, display, 6

**ovis, ovis f.:** sheep, 6

**pālus, -ī m.:** stake, 2

**pecus, pecoris n.:** herd, flock, 4

**praeacutus, -a, -um:** very pointed or sharp, 1

**reditus, -ūs m.:** return, 5

**repellō, -ere, repulī, -pulsum:** drive back, 1

**reponō, -ere, -posuī, -positum:** put back, 2

**resistō, -ere, -stifī:** resist, oppose; stand, 2

**somnus, -ī m.:** sleep, 14

**suprā:** above, before, 6

**tōtus -a, -um:** whole, entire, 14

**vērō:** in truth, in fact, certainly, 5

9   **magnī cōsiliī:** of...; gen. description

11   **hoc cōsilium cēpit:** he adopted this plan

13   **fēcit:** made (x) (y); double accusative

prae-acutum is a pred. accusative

**quid fierī vellet:** what he wished to be

done; ind. quest; impf. subj. volō

## 88. A GLASS TOO MUCH

Sub vesperum Polyphēmus ad spēluncam rediit, et eōdem modō 1  
 quō anteā cēnāvit. Tum Ulixēs utrem vīnī prompsit, quem forte (id  
 quod eī erat salūtī) sēcum attulerat; et postquam magnum pōculum  
 vīnō complēvit, mōnstrum ad bibendum provocāvit. Polyphēmus,  
 quī numquam anteā vīnum gustāverat, tōtum pōculum statim 5  
 exhausit; quod cum fēcisset, tantam voluptātem percēpit ut iterum  
 et tertium pōculum rēplērī iusserit. Tum, cum quaeſīvisset quō  
 nōmine Ulixēs appellārētur, ille respondit sē Neminem appellārī;  
 quod cum audīvisset, Polyphēmus ita locūtus est: "Hanc tibi  
 grātiām prō tantō beneficiō referam; tē postrēmū omnium 10  
 dēvorābō." Hoc cum dīxisset, cibō vīnōque gravis recubuit et brevī  
 tempore somnō oppressus est. Tum Ulixēs sociīs convocātīs,  
 "Habēmus," inquit, "quam petīvimus facultātem; nē igitur tantam  
 occāsiōnēm reī gerendae omittāmus."

**afferō, -ferre, attulī, allātum:** carry to bring 5  
**antea:** before, earlier, formerly, previously, 7  
**appellō (1):** call (by name), name, 12  
**beneficiū, -ī n.:** benefit, favor; kindness, 8  
**bibō, -ere, bibī:** drink, 4  
**cēnō (1):** to dine, eat dinner, 2  
**cibus, -ī m.:** food, 5  
**compleō, -ēre, ēvī, -plētūm:** fill full, fill up, 1  
**convocō (1):** to call together, 3  
**dēvorō (1):** swallow down, devour, 4  
**exhauriō, -ēre, -ausī, -austūm:** drink up, 1  
**facultās, -tātis f.:** ability, opportunity, 5  
**grātia, -ae f.:** graditude, favor, thanks, 10  
**gustō (1):** taste, 2  
**inquam, inquis, inquit:** to say, 6  
**iterum:** again, a second time, 3  
**loquor, loquī, locūtus sum:** speak, address, 9  
**nēmō, nūllius, nēminī, nēminem,**  
**nūllō/nūllā:** no one, 6  
**nōmen, nōminis, n.:** name, 12  
**numquam:** never, at no time, 4

**occāsiō, -iōnis f.:** chance, opportunity, 6  
**omittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missūm:** neglect, omit, 6  
**opprimō, -ere, -pressī:** to overpower, 5  
**percipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptūm:** feel perceive 5  
**petō, petere, petīvī, petītūm:** seek, aim at, 10  
**pōculūm, -ī n.:** cup, 7  
**postremus, -a, -um:** last, 1  
**prō:** before, in front of, for, 9  
**prōmō, -ere, -mpsī, -mptūm:** to bring out, 1  
**provocō (1):** call forth, 1  
**recumbō, -ere, uī:** lie back, lie down, 2  
**repleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētūm:** fill again, fill, 4  
**respondeō, -ēre, -dī, -ōnsus:** to answer, 13  
**somnus, -ī m.:** sleep, 14  
**tertius, -a, -um:** third, 2  
**tōtūs -a, -um:** whole, entire, 14  
**tu:** you, 10  
**ūter, ūtris m.:** skin, wine-skin, 1  
**vesper, vesperi m.:** evening, 4  
**voluptās, -tātis f.:** pleasure, delight, 2

1 **sub:** near  
**rediit:** pf. red-eō  
**eō-dēm modō:** in...; abl. of manner  
 2 **quō:** in which; abl. of manner  
**forte:** by chance; abl. as adverb  
 3 **eī erat salūtī:** because it served as a  
 refuge for him; 'because it was for refuge  
 for him,' double dat. (dat. of purpose and

dat. of interest)  
**attulerat:** plpf. af-ferō  
 4 **ad bibendum:** for...; ad + acc. gerund  
 expresses purpose  
 6 **quod:** this; 'which' obj. of fēcisset  
**ut...iusserit:** that...; result clause with  
 perfect subj. iubeō, translate in pf. tense  
 7 **quō nōmine:** with...; abl. means introduces

## 88. A GLASS TOO MUCH

- an indirect question
- 8 **Neminem**: acc. predicate of pass. appellārī
- 9 **quod**: *this; ‘which’* obj. of appellārī  
**tibi**: dat. ind. object of referam
- 10 **referam**: 1<sup>st</sup> sg. future, referō
- 11 **cibō vinōque**: *with...;* abl. cause with  
gravis
- brevī tempore**: *in...;* abl. time when
- 12 **oppressus est**: *was overcome*  
**sociis convocatis**: abl. abs. or dat. i.o.
- 13 **quam**: relative adj., ‘what opportunity,’ or  
relative pronoun, ‘the opportunity which’  
**nē...ōmittāmus**: *let us not...;* neg. jussive
- 14 **gerendae**: *of carrying out...;* gerundive  
modifies rēf; use a gerundive-gerund flip

## 89. THE BLINDING OF POLYPHEMUS

Hāc oratiōne habitā, postquam extrēmum palum ignī calefēcit, oculum 1  
 Polyphemī dormientis ferventī lignō perfōdit; quō factō omnēs in  
 diversās spēluncae partēs sē abdidērunt. At ille subitō illō dolōre oculū ē  
 somnō excitātus clāmōrem terribilem sustulit, et dum per spēluncam 5  
 errat, Ulixem manū prehendere cōnābātur; cum tamen iam omnīnō caecus  
 esset, nūllō modō hoc efficere potuit. Intereā reliquī Cyclōpēs, clāmōre  
 audītō, undique ad spēluncam convēnērunt, et ad introitum adstantēs quid 10  
 Polyphēmus ageret quaesīverunt, et quam ob causam tantum clāmōrem  
 sustulisset. Ille respondit sē graviter vulnerātum esse et magnō dolōre  
 adficī. Cum tamen posteā quaesīvissent quis ei vim intulisset, respondit 10  
 ille Neminem id fēcisse; quibus rēbus auditīs ūnus ē Cyclōpibus: “At sī  
 nēmō,” inquit, “tē vulnerāvit, haud dubium est quīn cōnsiliō deōrum,  
 quibus resistere nec possumus nec volumus, hōc suppliciō adficiāris.”  
 Hoc cum dīxisset, abiērunt Cyclōpēs eum in insāniām incidiſſe arbitrātū.

<b>abdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus:</b> to hide, put away, 3	<b>insānia, -ae f.:</b> insanity, madness, 1
<b>abeō, -ire, -iū, -itus:</b> go away, go off, depart, 6	<b>intereā:</b> meanwhile, 7
<b>adstō, -stāre, -stītī:</b> to stand at or near, 1	<b>introitus, -ūs m.:</b> entrance, 6
<b>afficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum:</b> influence, treat, 13	<b>lignum, -ī n.:</b> wood, 4
<b>agō, agere, ēgī, āctum:</b> to act, drive, lead, 13	<b>nec:</b> and not, nor, 10
spend, 13	<b>nēmō, nūllīus, nēmīnī, nēminem,</b>
<b>arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum:</b> to judge, think, 11	<b>nūllō/nūllā:</b> no one, 6
<b>caecus, -a, -um:</b> blind, 2	<b>ob:</b> on account of ( <i>acc.</i> ), 13
<b>calefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum:</b> make hot, 1	<b>oculus, -ī, m.:</b> eye, 7
<b>clāmor, -ōris m.:</b> shout, roar, applause, 4	<b>omnīnō:</b> altogether, wholly, entirely, 11
<b>cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum:</b> to try, attempt, 7	<b>ōrātio, -ionis f.:</b> speaking, speech, language, 2
<b>conveniō, -ere, vēnī, ventum:</b> come together 8	<b>pālus, -ī m.:</b> stake, 2
<b>Cyclōps, Cyclōpis m.:</b> Cyclops, 7	<b>perfodiō, -ere, -fōdī, -fōssum:</b> dig through, 1
<b>dīversus, -a, -um:</b> different, contrary, 1	<b>posteā:</b> after this, afterwards, 7
<b>dormiō, -ire, -īvī:</b> to sleep, 8	<b>prehendō, -ere, -hēndī, -hēnsum:</b> seize, 5
<b>dubius, -a, -um:</b> doubtful, uncertain, 3	<b>quīn:</b> nay (even), (but) that, 12
<b>efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus:</b> make, form, 3	<b>resistō, -ere, -stītī:</b> resist, oppose; stand, 2
<b>errō (1):</b> wander, 3	<b>respondeō, -ēre, -dī, -ōnsus:</b> to answer, 13
<b>excitō (1):</b> excite, rouse, incite, 8	<b>somnus, -ī m.:</b> sleep, 14
<b>extrēmus, -a, -um:</b> outermost, farthest, last, 2	<b>suppliūcū, -ī n.:</b> punishment, supplication, 5
<b>ferveō, -ēre:</b> to boil; glow, 1	<b>terribilis, -ē:</b> terrible, dreadful, 5
<b>haud:</b> by no means, not at all, 4	<b>tollō, tolle, sustuli, sublātum:</b> raise, lift up 10
<b>ignis, ignis, m.:</b> fire, 9	<b>tu:</b> you, 10
<b>incidō, -ere, -cidī:</b> fall into, fall upon, 3	<b>undique:</b> from everywhere, from all sides, 7
<b>inferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus:</b> bring on, wage, 3	<b>vulnerō (1):</b> wound, injure, 7
<b>inquam, inquis, inquit:</b> to say, 6	

1 **hāc...habitā:** *this speech made*; idiom  
 ignī: abl. of means, 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. i-stem noun  
 2 **ferventī:** abl., 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. i-stem adj. (pple)  
 quō factō: abl. abs. translate quō as ‘this’

4 **sustulit:** *raised*; pf. tollō, see also l. 20  
 7 **adstantēs:** *standing near*; pres. pple  
 12 **haud...quin:** *it is by means doubtful that*  
 13 **quibus:** *whom*; dat. of compound verb

## 90. THE ESCAPE

Polyphēmus, ubi sociōs suōs abiisse sēnsit, furōre atque āmentiā 1  
 impulsus Ulixem iterum quaerere coepit; tandem cum portam  
 invēnisset, saxum quō obstructa erat āmovit, ut pecus in agrōs  
 exīret. Tum ipse in introitū cōnsēdit, et ut quaeque ovis ad hunc  
 locum vēnerat, eius tergum manibus tractābat, nē virī inter ovēs 5  
 exīre possent. Quod cum animadvertisset Ulixēs, intellēxit omnem  
 spem salūtis in dolō magis quam in virtūte ponī. Itaque hoc  
 cōnsilium iniit. Prīmum trēs quās vīdit pinguissimās ex ovibus  
 dēlēgit, quās cum inter sē vīminibus coniūnxisset, ūnum ex sociōs  
 suīs ventribus eārum ita subiēcit ut omnīnō latēret; deinde ovēs 10  
 hominem sēcum ferentēs ad portam ēgit. Id accidit quod fore  
 suspicātus erat. Polyphēmus enim postquam terga ovium manibus  
 tractāvit, eās praeterīre passus est. Ulixēs ubi rem tam fēlīciter  
 ēvēnisse vīdit, omnēs sociōs suōs ex ḍordine eōdem modō ēmīsit; 15  
 quō factō ipse nōvissimus ēvāsit.

**abeō, -īre, -ī, -itus:** go away, go off, depart, 6  
**accidō, -ere, accidī:** to happen, fall (on)to, 8  
**ager, -grī m.:** land, field, territory, 11  
**agō, agere, ēgī, āctum:** drive, lead, spend, 13  
**āmentia, -ae f.:** madness, 2  
**āmoveō, -ere, -mōvī, -mōtum:** move away, 5  
**animadvertō, -ere:** turn mind to, notice, 6  
**coniungō, -ere, -nxī, -nctum:** join together, 2  
**consīdō, -ere, -sēdī, sessum:** sit down, settle 1  
**deinde:** then, thereupon, 8  
**dēlīgō, -ere, -lēgī, -lectum:** choose, select, 6  
**dolus, -ī m.:** trick, deceit, 4  
**ēmittō, -ere, -mīstī, -missum:** send out, 2  
**ēvadō, -ere, ēvāsī, ēvāsum:** go out, escape, 9  
**ēveniō, -īre:** turn out, happen, 8  
**exeō, -īre, -ī, -itus:** go out, 5  
**feliciter:** happily, fortunately, 3  
**ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus:** carry, bear, endure, 10  
**furor, -ōris m.:** rage, fury, madness, 4  
**impellō, -ere, pulī, pulsum:** drive on incite 3  
**ineō, -īre, -ī, -itum:** go into, enter, 4  
**inter:** between, among (+ acc.), 10  
**introitus, -ūs m.:** entrance, 6  
**inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum:** find, discover 8  
**itaque:** and so, 8

1 **abiisse:** pf. inf. ab-eō in ind. discourse

3 **quō:** by which; abl. mean

**iterum:** again, a second time, 3  
**lateō, -ēre, -uī:** lie hidden, 1  
**magis:** more, rather, 1  
**novus, -a, -um:** new, 4  
**obstruō, -ere, -ūxī, -ūctum:** block, close off 4  
**omnīnō:** altogether, wholly, entirely, 11  
**ōrdō, ūrdinis m.:** arrangement, order, rank, 1  
**ovis, ovis f.:** sheep, 6  
**passus, -ūs:** pace, 7  
**pecus, pecoris n.:** herd, flock, 4  
**pinguis, -e:** fat, 1  
**ponō, ponere, posuī, positum:** to place, put, 5  
**porta, -ae f.:** gate, 7  
**praetereō, -īre, -īvī, -itum:** go pass, pass by 1  
**quisque, quidque:** each one, each person, 3  
**subiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum:** cast under, 1  
**suspicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum:** suspect, mistrust, 7  
**tam:** so, so much, so very, such, 8  
**tergum, -ī n.:** back, 8  
**tractō (1):** to handle, touch, 2  
**trēs, tria:** three, 9  
**venter, ventris m.:** belly, 1  
**vīmen, vīminis n.:** willow, 1  
**virtūs, -ūtis f.:** valor, manhood, excellence, 10

**obstructa erat:** it...; supply porta as subject

**ut...exīret:** so that...; purpose, exeō

## 90. THE ESCAPE

- 4 **ut:** *as...; as often, ut + indicative*  
**quaeque:** *each; nom. sg. modifies fem. ovis*
- 5 **nē...possent:** neg. purpose, impf. possum  
6 **quod:** *this; ‘which’*
- 7 **magis quam:** *more than; magis is an adv.*  
**ponī:** *was placed; pres. pass. inf. ponō*
- 8 **iniit:** *he initiated; pf. in-eō*  
**prīmum:** *first; adverb*
- 9 **trēs:** supply acc. pl. ovēs  
**pinguissimās:** superlative adj.
- 9 **quās cum:** *when...these (sheep)*  
**inter sē:** *to one another*
- 10 **suīs ventribus:** *under...; dat compound*
- of verb  
**ita...ut:** *in such a way...that; result clause*
- 11 **ferentēs:** pres. pple, ferō  
**ēgit:** pf. agō
- Id...suspicātus erat:** *it happened as he had suspected that it would be; ‘that which he had suspected would be happened’; id is subject; fore (~futūrum esse) is fut. inf.*
- 12 **ovīum:** *of the sheep; i-stem gen. pl.*
- 13 **eās:** *them; i.e. the sheep*  
**passus est:** *allowed; pf. dep. patior*
- 15 **quō factō:** *this done; abs.: ‘which done’*  
**nōvissimus:** *last; ‘most recent’*

## 91. OUT OF DANGER

Hīs rēbus ita confectīs, Ulixēs veritus nē Polyphēmus fraudem 1 sentīret, cum sociīs quam celerrimē ad lītus contendit; quō cum vēnissent, ab eīs quī nāvī praesidiō relictī erant magnā cum laetītiā exceptī sunt. Hī enim cum anxiīs animīs iam trēs diēs continuōs reditum eōrum exspectāvissent, suspicātī (id quidem quod erat) eōs 5 in aliquod perīculum magnum incidisse, ipsī auxiliandī causā ēgressī parābant. Tum Ulixēs non satis tūtum arbitrātus in eō locō manēre, quam celerrimē proficiscī cōstituit. Iussit igitur omnēs nāvem cōnsendere, et ancorīs sublātīs paulum ā lītore in altum prōvectus est. Tum magnā voce exclāmāvit: "Tū, Polyphēme, quī 10 iūra hospitī spernis, iūstam et debitam poenam immānitātis tuae solvistī." Hāc voce audītā Polyphēmus īrā vehementer commōtus ad mare sē contulit, et ubi nāvem paulum ā lītore remōtam esse intellēxit, saxum ingēns manū correptum in eam partem coniēcit unde vōcem venīre sēnsit. Graecī autem, etsi nōn multum āfuit 15 quīn submergerentur, nūllō damnō acceptō cursum tenuērunt.

absum, -esse, āfū: to be away, be absent, 7  
aliquī, -qua, -quod: some, any, definite, 3  
altus, -a, -um: high, lofty, tall, 2  
ancora, ancorae f.: anchor, 7  
anxius, -a, -um: anxious, 3  
arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum: to judge, think, 11  
auxilior, -ārī, -ātum: help, 1  
coniciō, -ere, -iēcī: throw together, throw, take oneself, 13  
conscendō, -ere, -ndī, -nsum: climb aboard, 6  
contendō, -ere, -tī, -tus: strive; hasten; fight 11  
continuus, -a, -um: continuous, successive, 2  
corripiō, -ere, -uī, -reptus: snatch (up), 6  
cursus, -ūs m.: course, running, haste, 10  
damnum, -ī n.: harm, injury, 1  
debeō, -ere, -uī, debitum: to owe, ought, 2  
etsī: even if, although, though, 13  
excipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptum: receive, welcome 9  
exclāmō (1): cry out, 3  
fraus, fraudis f.: fraud, deception, 2  
hospitium, ī n.: hospitality, 5  
immānitās, -tātis f.: cruelty, 1  
incidō, -ere, -cidī: fall into, fall upon, 3  
īra, īrae f.: anger, 12  
iūs, iūris n.: justice, law, right, 4

iūstus, -a, -um: just, 1  
laetitia, -ae f.: joy, happiness, 3  
maneō, -ēre, mansī, --: to stay, wait, 9  
poena, poenae, f.: punishment, 3  
praesidium, -ī n.: protection, guard, 3  
provehō, -ere, -vēxī, -vectum: carry forth, 3  
quidem: indeed, in fact, assuredly, certainly, 8  
quīn: nay (even), (but) that, 12  
reditus, -ūs m.: return, 5  
relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictum: leave behind, 9  
removeō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus: remove, 1  
satis: enough, sufficient, 6  
spernō, -ere, sprēvī, sprētum: spurn, reject, 1  
submergō, -ere, -mersī, -mersum: to sink, 1  
suspicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum: suspect, mistrust, 7  
teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum: to hold, keep 13  
tollō, tolle, sustuli, sublātum: raise, lift up 10  
trēs, tria: three, 9  
tu: you, 10  
tutus, -a, -um: safe, secure, 3  
tuus, -a, -um: your, yours, 3  
unde: whence, from which source, 6  
vehementer: strongly, violently, ardently, 11  
vereor, -ērī, -itus: be afraid, fear; revere, 5  
vōx, vōcis, f.: voice, 9

## 91. OUT OF DANGER

- 1 **nē**: *lest...realize; fearing clause*  
2 **quō**: *to there; “to where”*  
3 **nāvī praeſidiō**: *as protection for the ship; double dat. (dat. interest + dat purpose)*  
5 **id...erat**: *(that which indeed was true)*  
6 **auxiliandi...: for the sake of helping**  
7 **ēgredī**: pres. dep. complementary inf.  
**satis tūtum**: *that it is safe enough; add esse*  
8 **quam celerrimē**: *as fast as possible*  
**proficisci**: pres. dep. inf.  
9 **ancorīs sublatīs**: abl. abs., PPP tollō
- 10 **paulum**: *a little; adverb*  
**in altum**: *to the sea; ‘into the deep (water)’*  
10 **magnā voce**: *with a loud...; abl. manner*  
**Polyphēme**: vocative, direct. address  
11 **immānitātis tuae**: *for...; gen. of crime*  
12 **solvistī**: *you have paid*  
13 **sē contulit**: *carried himself; pf. conferō*  
14 **correptum**: *grabbed; modifies saxum*  
15 **nōn...quīn**: *not very far from being drowned; multum is an adv. acc.*

## 92. THE COUNTRY OF THE WINDS

Pauca mīlia passuum ab eō locō prōgressus Ulixēs ad īnsulam 1  
Aeoliam nāvem appulit. Haec patria erat ventōrum,

“Hīc vastō rēx Aeolus antrō

luctantēs ventōs tempestatēsque sonōrās

imperiō premit ac vincīs et carcere frēnat.” 5

Ibi rēx ipse Graecōs hospitiō excēpit, atque eīs persuāsit ut ad recuperandās vīrēs paucōs diēs in eā regiōne commorārentur. Septimō diē, cum sociī ē labōribus sē rēcēpissent, Ulixēs, nē annī tempore ā nāvigātiōne excluderētur, sibi sine morā proficīscendum statuit. Tum Aeolus, quī sciēbat Ulixem cupidissimum esse patriae 10 videndae, ei iam profectūrō magnum saccum e coriō cōnfectum dedit, in quō ventōs omnēs praeter ūnum inclūserat. Zephyrum tantum solverat, quod ille ventus ab īnsulā Aeoliā ad Ithacam navigantī est secundus. Ulixēs hoc dōnum libenter accēpit, et grātīs prō tantō beneficiō actīs saccum ad mālum alligāvit. Tum 15 omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem parātīs meridiānō ferē tempore ē portū solvit.

**adligō** (1): bind to, tie to, 2

**Aeolia, -ae f.**: Aeolia, 2

**Aeolus, -ī m.**: Aeolus, 2

**agō, agere, ēgī, āctum**: drive, lead, spend, 13

**antrum, -ī n.**: cave, 1

**appellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsī**: drive to, 14

**beneficiūm, -ī n.**: benefit, favor; kindness, 8

**carcer, -eris m.**: prison, 1

**commoror, -ārī, -ātum**: delay, linger, tarry, 3

**corium, -ī n.**: hide, leather, 1

**cupidus, -a, -um**: desirous, eager, 1

**dōnum, -ī n.**: gift, 6

**excipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptum**: receive, welcome 9

**exclūdō, -ere, -ūsī, -ūsum**: shut out, hinder, 2

**ferē**: almost, nearly, closely, 1

**frēnō** (1): to bridle, restrain, 1

**grātia, -ae f.**: graditude, favor, thanks, 10

**hospitium, ī n.**: hospitality, 5

**imperium, -ī n.**: power to command, rule, 2

**inclūdō, -ere, -ūsī, -ūsum**: close in, shut in, 7

**libenter**: gladly, willingly, 12

**luctor, -ārī, -ātus sum**: wrestle, struggle, 1

**mālus, -ī m.**: mast, pole, 1

**meridiānus, -a, -um**: midday, noonday, 1

**mīlle (pl. mīlia)**: thousand, 7

**mora, -ae f.**: delay, hesitation, hindrance, 14

**nāvigātiō, -ōnis f.**: sailing, voyage, 2

**passus, -ūs**: pace, 7

**patria, -ae f.**: fatherland, country, 8

**persuādeō, -ere, -suāsī, -suāsum**: persuade, 9

**portus, -ūs m.**: harbort, port, 3

**praeter**: except, besides, 2

**premō, -ere, pressī, pressum**: press, check, 1

**prō**: before, in front of, for, 9

**profectiō, -tiōnis f.**: departure, start, 3

**recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum**: accept, take back, 8

**recuperō** (1): recover, 1

**saccus, -ī m.**: sack, bag, 5

**sciō, -re, -īvī (ī), -ītus**: know, understand, 9

**secundus, -a, -um**: following, favorable, 2

**septimus, -a, -um**: seventh, 2

**sonōrus, -a, -um**: sounding, loud, noisy, 1

**statuō, -ere, -ūtī, -ūtus**: establish, build, 3

**vastus, -a, -um**: waste, huge, enormous, 1

**vinculum, -ī n.**: bond, chain, 4

**Zephyrus, -ī m.**: Zephyrus, 1

## 92. THE COUNTRY OF THE WINDS

- 1 **mīlia passuum**: few miles; acc. extent  
3 **Hīc vastō...frēnat**: prose word order: ‘Hīc in vastō antrō Aeōlus imperiō premit ac vincīt et carcere frēnat luctantēs ventōs et tempestātēs sonōrās’  
5 **imperiō premit**: checks with his power  
**vincīt et carcere**: with chains and prison  
6 **hospiitiō**: with hospitality; abl. of manner  
**ut...commorārentur**: that...; result  
**ad...vīrēs**: for...; employ a gerundive-gerund flip and translate this gerundive-(adj). as a gerund with an object
- 8 **sē rēcēpissent**: had retreated; idiom  
**nē...: so that...might not**; neg. purpose  
9 **proficiscedum (esse)**: that he had to set out; pass. periphrastic with dat. agent  
11 **profectūrō**: to the one about to set out  
14 **navigantī...secundus**: favorable to the one sailing; dative of interest, pres. pple.  
15 **grātiīs...actīs**: abl. abs. PPP agō, “given”  
16 **omnibus...paratīs**: abl. abs.  
ad: for  
**meridiānō...tempore**: abl. time when  
17 **solvit**: set sail

### 93. THE WIND-BAG

Novem diēs secundissimō ventō cursum tenuērunt, iamque in 1  
cōspectum patriae suae vēnerant, cum Ulixēs lassitūdine  
confectus (ipse enim gubernābat) ad quiētem capiendam recubuit.  
At sociī, quī iam dudum mīrābantur quid in illō saccō inclūsum  
esset, cum ducem somnō oppressum vidērent, tantam occāsiōnem 5  
nōn omittendam arbitrātī sunt; credēbant enim aurum et argentum  
ibi esse cēlāta. Itaque spē lucrī adductī saccum sine morā solvērunt,  
quō factō ventī

“velut agmine factō,

quā data porta, ruunt et terras turbine perflant.” 10

Hīc tanta tempestās subitō coōrta est ut illī cursum tenēre nōn  
possent sed in eandem partem unde erant profectī referrentur.  
Ulixēs ē somnō excitātus quō in locō rēs esset statim intellēxit;  
saccum solūtum, Ithacam post tergum relictam vīdit. Tum vērō īrā  
vehementer exārsit sociōsque obiurgābat quod cupiditāte pecūniae 15  
adductī spem patriae videndae prōiēcissent.

**addūcō, -ere, -xi, -ctum:** to lead to, bring, 8  
**agmen, agminis n.:** formation, battle line, 1  
**arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum:** to judge, think, 11  
**argentum, -ī n.:** silver, 1  
**aurum, -ī n.:** gold, 3  
**cēlō (1):** hide, conceal, 5  
**conspectus, -ūs m.:** sight, view, 6  
**coōrior, -ōrī, -ortus sum:** to arise, 4  
**crēdō, -ere, -didi, -ditum:** believe, trust, 2  
**cupiditās, -tatis f.:** desire, passion, 5  
**cursus, -ūs m.:** course, running, haste, 10  
**dūdum:** a short time ago; just now, once, 2  
**dux, ducis m/f.:** leader, guide, chieftain, 5  
**exārdēscō, -ere, -ārsī, -ārsum:** catch fire, 2  
**excitō (1):** excite, rouse, incite, 8  
**gubernō (1):** steer, direct, 1  
**inclūdō, -ere, -ūsī, -ūsum:** close in, shut in, 7  
**īra, īrae f.:** anger, 12  
**itaque:** and so, 8  
**Ithaca, -ae f.:** Ithaca, 3  
**lassitūdō, -inis f.:** weariness, 2  
**lucerum, -ī n.:** gain, profit; money, 1  
**mīror, -ārī, -ātus:** to wonder, be amazed at, 7  
**mora, -ae f.:** delay, hesitation, hindrance, 14  
**novem:** nine, 3

**obiurgō (1):** child, scold, reproach, 2  
**occāsiō, -iōnis f.:** chance, opportunity, 6  
**omittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum:** neglect, omit, 6  
**opprimō, -ere, -pressī:** to overpower 5  
**patria, -ae f.:** fatherland, country, 8  
**pecūnia, -ae f.:** money, 1  
**perflō (1):** to blow over, 1  
**porta, -ae f.:** gate, 7  
**proiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum:** throw forth, 4  
**quiēs, quiētis f.:** rest, repose, sleep, 5  
**recumbō, -ere, uī:** lie back, lie down, 2  
**relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictum:** leave behind, 9  
**ruō, -ere, ruī:** rush, 2  
**saccus, -ī m.:** sack, bag, 5  
**secundus, -a, -um:** following, favorable, 2  
**somnus, -ī m.:** sleep, 14  
**teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum:** to hold, keep 13  
**tergum, -ī n.:** back, 8  
**turbō, turbinis m.:** whirlwind, 1  
**unde:** whence, from which source, 6  
**vehementer:** strongly, violently, ardently, 11  
**velut:** just as, even as, as, 1  
**ventus, -ī m.:** wind, 10  
**vērō:** in truth, in fact, certainly, 5

### 93. THE WIND-BAG

- 1 **Novem diēs**: *for...; acc. duration of time*  
3 **confectus**: *exhausted*  
ad...**capidendum**: *to take rest; “for taking,” use a gerund-gerundive flip*  
4 **quid**: *what...; ind. question plpf. pass. subjunctive: translate in plpf. pass. tense*  
5 **oppressum**: *overcome; PPP opprimō*  
6 **ōmittendam (esse)**: *must not be neglected; passive periphrastic in indirect discourse*
- 7 **cēlāta (esse)**: two neuter acc. are subject  
**adductī**: *drawn; PPP, nom. pl.*  
9 **velut**: *just as...; the winds are likened to troops sacking a city; from Aeneid I.82-84*  
**agmine factō**: abl. abs.  
10 **quā data (est) porta**: *where...; relative cl.*  
14 **solutūm (et)... loosened and**  
15 **quod...prōiēcissent**: *subj., alleged cause*  
16 **...videndae**: *of...; gerundive-gerund flip*

## 94. A DRAWING OF LOTS

Brevī spatiō intermissō, Graecī īnsulae cuidam appropinquāvērunt 1  
 in quā Circē, filia Sōlis, habitābat. Quō cum nāvem appulisset,  
 Ulixēs in terram frumentandī causā ēgrediendum esse statuit; nam  
 cognōverat frūmentum quod in nāvī habērent iam dēficere. Sociīs  
 5 igitur ad sē convocātīs quōd in locō rēs esset et quid fierī vellet  
 ostendit. Cum tamen omnēs memoriā tenērent quam crudelī morte  
 necātī essent eī quī nuper ē nāvī ēgressī essent, nēmō repertus est  
 quī hoc negōtium suscipere vellet. Quae cum ita essent, rēs ad  
 contrōversiam dēducta est. Tandem Ulixēs consensū omnium  
 sociōs in duās partēs divīsit, quārum alterī Eurylochus, vir summae 10  
 virtūtis, alterī ipse praeesset. Tum hī inter sē sortītī sunt ūter in  
 terram ēgrederētur. Hōc factō, Eurylochō sorte ēvēnit ut cum  
 duōbus et vigintī sociīs rem susciperet.

- alter, -era, -erum:** other (of two), second, 7  
**appellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsī:** drive to, 14  
**appropinquō (1):** come near, approach, 8  
**consensus, -ūs m.:** agreement, consent, 1  
**contrōversia, -ae f.:** dispute, controversy, 2  
**convocō (1):** to call together, 3  
**crūdēlis, -e:** cruel, bitter, bloody, 6  
**dēdūcō, -ere:** lead or bring down, launch, 10  
**dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum:** fail, 3  
**dīvidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsum:** divide, separate, 3  
**duo, duae, duo:** two, 10  
**Eurylochus, -ī m.:** Eurylochus, 6  
**ēveniō, -ire:** turn out, happen, 8  
**fīō, fierī, factus:** become, be made, 9  
**frūmentor, -ārī, -ātum:** fetch grain, forage, 1  
**frūmentum, -ī n.:** grain, 4  
**inter:** between, among (+ acc.), 10  
**intermittō, -ere:** interrupt, break off, 5  
**memoria, -ae f.:** memory, 4  
**mors, mortis, f.:** death, 9

- 2 **Quō:** to there; “to where”  
 3 **ēgrediendum esse:** (they) had to  
 disembark; pass. periphrastic  
 5 **convocātīs:** PPP in abl. abs.  
 quō...esset: in quō locō, ind. question  
 quid fierī: what she wanted to be done; inf.  
 fīō, impf. subj. volō  
 6 **memoriā:** in memory; abl. means  
 quam...morte: with how cruel a death...

- nam:** for, 6  
**necō (1):** to kill, slay, put to death, 9  
**negōtium, -ī n.:** task, business, occupation, 13  
**nēmō, nūllīus, nēminī, nēminem,**  
**nūllō/nūlla:** no one, 6  
**nūper:** recently, lately, not long ago, 2  
**ostendō (1):** show, display, 6  
**praesum, -esse, -fūi:** be before, preside over 2  
**reperiō, -ire, repperī, repertum:** find out, 9  
**sōl, sōlis m.:** sun, 10  
**sors, sortis f.:** lot, 1  
**sortiō, -ire, ivī, sortitūm:** to choose by lot, 2  
**spatiūm, -ī n.:** space, span, extent, 6  
**statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus:** establish, build, 3  
**suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum:** undertake, 14  
**teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum:** to hold, keep 13  
**uter, utra, utrum:** which (of two)?, 1  
**vīgintī:** twenty, 1  
**virtūs, -ūtis f.:** valor, manhood, excellence, 10

- 7 **eī qui:** those who...; eī subject of necō  
 8 **vellet:** impf. subj. volō (inf. velle)  
**Quae cum...esset:** since these things are  
 so; ‘as a result’  
 10 **alterī...alterī:** one...the other; dat. of  
 compound impf. praeesset, ‘was over’  
 11 **ūter:** which (of the two)...; ind. question  
 12 **Eurylochō:** for Eurylochus; dat. of interest  
**ēvēnit ut:** it turned out that; noun result cl.

## 95. THE HOUSE OF THE ENCHANTRESS

Hīs rēbus ita constitutīs eī quī sortītī erant in interiōrem partem 1  
 īinsulae profectī sunt. Tantus tamen timor animōs eōrum  
 occupāverat ut nihil dubitārent quīn mortī obviam īrent. Vix  
 quidem poterant eī quī in nāvī relictī erant lacrimās tenēre;  
 credēbant enim sē sociōs suōs numquam post hoc tempus visūrōs. 5  
 Illī autem aliquantum itineris progressī ad villam quandam  
 pervēnērunt summā magnificētiā aedificātam, cuius ad ōstium  
 cum adiissent, cantum dulcissimum audīvērunt. Tanta autem fuit  
 eius vocis dulcēdō ut nūllō modō retinērī possent quīn ianuam  
 pulsārent. Hōc factō ipsa Circē forās exiit, et summā cum 10  
 benignitāte omnēs in hospitium invitāvit. Eurylochus īnsidiās sibi  
 comparātī suspicātus forīs exspectāre cōnstituit, sed reliquī reī  
 novitāte adductī intrāvērunt. Cēnam magnificam omnibus rēbus  
 instrūctam invēnērunt et iussū dominae libentissimē accubuērunt.  
 At Circē vīnum quod servī apposuērunt medicāmentō quōdam 15  
 miscuerat; quod cum bibissent, gravī somnō subitō oppressī sunt.

- accumbō, -ere, accubūt:** to lie (at dinner), 4  
**addūcō, -ere, -xī, -ctum:** to lead to, bring, 8  
**adeō, -ire, -i(v)rī:** go to, approach, 4  
**aedificō (1):** make a building, build, 2  
**aliquantum, -ī n.:** somewhat, a little, 2  
**appōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum:** set before, 3  
**benignitās, -tatis f.:** kindness, 1  
**bibō, -ere, bibī:** drink, 4  
**cantus, -ūs m.:** song, singing, 1  
**cēna, -ae f.:** dinner, 5  
**comparō (1):** prepare, collect, 4  
**crēdō, -ere, -didi, -ditum:** believe, trust, 2  
**domina, -ae f.:** mistress, 1  
**dubitō (1):** to hesitate, doubt, 5  
**dulcēdō, -inis f.:** sweetness, 1  
**dulcis, -e:** sweet, dear, fresh, 2  
**eō, īre, ī (īvī), itūrus:** go, 3  
**Eurylochus, -ī m.:** Eurylochus, 6  
**exeō, -ire, -ī, -itus:** go out, 5  
**forās:** out of doors, 1  
**forīs:** outdoors, out of doors, 1  
**hospiitum, ī n.:** hospitality, 5  
**ianua, -ae f.:** door, 2  
**insidia, -ārum f.:** ambush, 2  
**instruō, -ere, -ūxī, -uctum:** equip, draw up, 6  
**interior, -ius:** interior, 3  
**intrō (1):** go into, enter, 7
- inveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum:** find, discover 8  
**invitō (1):** to invite, 1  
**lacrima, -ae f.:** tear, 10  
**libenter:** gladly, willingly, 12  
**magnificētia, ae f.:** splendor, magnificence 1  
**māgnificus, -a, -um:** splendid, magnificent, 2  
**medicāmentum, -ī n.:** drug, potion, 1  
**misceō, -ere, -ūi, mīxtum:** mix, mingle, 1  
**mors, mortis, f.:** death, 9  
**nihil:** nothing, 14  
**novitās, -tatis f.:** newness, novelty, 3  
**numquam:** never, at no time, 4  
**obviam:** in the way of, opposite to (+ dat.) 3  
**occupō (1):** occupy, seize, 8  
**opprimō, -ere, -pressī:** to overpower 5  
**ōstium, -ī n.:** mouth, entrance, 3  
**quidem:** indeed, in fact, assuredly, certainly, 8  
**quīn:** nay (even), (but) that, 12  
**relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictum:** leave behind, 9  
**retineō, -ere, -ūi, -tentum:** hold/keep back, 3  
**somnus, -ī m.:** sleep, 14  
**sortiō, -ire, īvī, sortītum:** to choose by lot, 2  
**suspicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum:** suspect, mistrust, 7  
**teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum:** to hold, keep 13  
**villa, -ae f.:** country-house, villa, 2  
**vix:** with difficulty, with effort, scarcely, 5  
**vōx, vōcis, f.:** voice, 9

## 95. THE HOUSE OF THE ENCHANTRESS

- 3 **ut...dubitarent**: *that...; result clause*  
**nihil dubitarent quīn**: *they did not at all doubt that; quīn follows “nōn dubitō”*  
**trent**: *impf. subj. eō, clause of doubt*
- 4 **eī qui**: *those who...; nom. subject*  
**tenēre**: *to hold back; i.e. restrain*
- 5 **visūrōs (esse)**: *fut. inf. videō*
- 7 **summā magnificentiā**: *with..; manner*  
9 **nūllō modō**: *in no way; abl. manner*
- 12 **reī novitāte**: *by the novelty of the affair*  
14 **instructam**: *equipped with all things*
- 15 **quod**: *this; ‘which, obj. of bibissent*  
16 **gravī somnō**: *abl. means; i-stem adj.*

## 96. THE CHARM

Tum Circē, quae artis magicae summam scientiam habēbat, baculō 1  
aureō quod gerēbat capita eōrum tetigit; quō factō omnēs in porcōs  
subitō conversī sunt. Intereā Eurylochus ignārus quid in aedibus  
agerētur ad ōstium sedēbat; postquam tamen ad sōlis occāsum  
anxiō animō et sollicitō exspectāvit, sōlus ad nāvem regredī 5  
constituit. Eō cum vēnisset, sollicitūdine ac timōre tam perturbātus  
fuit ut quae vīdisset vix dīlūcidē narrāre posset. Ulixēs autem satis  
intellēxit sociōs suōs in periculō versārī, et gladiō correptō  
Eurylochō imperāvit ut sine morā viam ad istam domum  
dēmōstrāret. Ille tamen multīs cum lacrimīs Ulixem complexus 10  
obsecrāre coepit nē in tantum periculum sē committeret; sī quid  
gravius eī accidisset, omnium salūtem in summō discrīmine  
futūram. Ulixēs autem respondit sē nēminem invītum sēcum  
adductūrum; eī licēre, sī mallet, in nāvī manēre; sē ipsum sine ūllō  
praesidiō rem susceptūrum. Hoc cum magnā vōce dīxisset, ē nāvī 15  
dēsiluit et nūllō sequente sōlus in viam sē dedit.

**accidō, -ere, accidī:** to happen, fall (on)to, 8  
**addūcō, -ere, -xī, -ctum:** to lead to, bring, 8  
**aedis, -is f.:** temple, *pl.* house, 1  
**agō, agere, ēgī, āctum:** drive, lead, spend, 13  
**anxius, -a, -um:** anxious, 3  
**ars, artis f.:** skill, craft, art, 5  
**aureus, -a, -um:** golden, 13  
**baculum, -ī n.:** staff, wand, 4  
**committō, -mittere, -mīsi:** commit, entrust, 6  
**complector, -plexī, -plexus sum:** embrace, 3  
**convertō, -ere, -ī, -rsus:** turn (around), 6  
**corripiō, -ere, -uī, -reptus:** snatch (up), 6  
**dēmonstrō (1):** to show, demonstrate, 13  
**dēsiliō, -īre, -siluī, -sultum:** jump down, 1  
**dilūcidē:** distinctly, plainly, 1  
**discrīmen, -crīminis n.:** crisis, peril, 5  
**domus, -ūs f.:** house, home, dwelling, 11  
**Eurylochus, -ī m.:** Eurylochus, 6  
**gladius, -ī m.:** sword, 10  
**ignarus, -a, -um:** ignorant, not knowing, 1  
**imperō (1):** order, command, 12  
**intereā:** meanwhile, 7  
**invītus, -a, -um:** unwilling, 2  
**iste, ista, istud:** that or those (of yours), 7  
**lacrima, -ae f.:** tear, 10  
**licet, -ēre, -uit:** is allowed, permitted, 5  
**magicus, -a, -um:** magic, 5

**malō, malle, maluī:** to prefer, 1  
**maneō, -ēre, mansī, --:** to stay, wait, 9  
**mora, -ae f.:** delay, hesitation, hindrance, 14  
**narrō (1):** to narrate, relate, 7  
**obsecrō (1):** beseech, implore, entreat, 5  
**occāsus, -ūs m.:** fall, destruction, 4  
**ōstium, -īn n.:** mouth, entrance, 3  
**perturbō (1):** to trouble, greatly disturb, 2  
**porcus, -ī m.:** pig, swine, 5  
**praesidium, -īn n.:** protection, guard, 3  
**regredior, -gredī, -gressus sum:** step back, 1  
**respondeō, -ēre, -dī, -ōnsus:** to answer, 13  
**satis:** enough, sufficient, 6  
**scientia, -ae f.:** knowledge, wisdom, 6  
**sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessum:** to sit, 6  
**sequor, -ī, secūtus:** follow, pursue, attend, 4  
**sōl, sōlis m.:** sun, 10  
**sollicitūdō, sollicitūdinis f.:** anxiety, worry, 1  
**sollicitus, -a, -um:** troubled, anxious, 1  
**sōlus, -a, -um:** alone, only, lone, sole, 6  
**suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum:** undertake, 14  
**tam:** so, so much, so very, such, 8  
**tangō, -ere, tetigī, tactum:** to touch, 3  
**ūllus, -a, -um:** any, 3  
**ver sor (1):** be engaged, move about, live, 3  
**vix:** with difficulty, with effort, scarcely, 5  
**vōx, vōcis, f.:** voice, 9

## 96. THE CHARM

- 2 **quō factō:** *this done;* abl. abs.
- 3 **quid in aedibus agerētur:** *what was done in the house;* ind. question governed by the adjective ignarus
- 4 **ad ḍōstium:** *near the entrance*
- 6 **Eō:** *to there;* adverb  
**tam perturbātus:** *so upset;* predicate
- 7 **ut...posset:** *that...;* result, impf. subj.  
**quea vīdisse:** *(the things) which he had seen;* relative of characteristic, the missing antecedent is obj. of narrāre
- 8 **sociōs...versārī:** *that...;* pres. dep. inf. in ind. discourse
- 9 **imperāvit:** *ordered (dat) that...;* governs a dat. and ind. command (ut + subj.)
- 11 **nē...sē committeret:** *not to entrust himself...;* ‘that...not,’ ind. command  
**sī quid:** *if anything more serious;* quid is indefinite before sī; comparative adj.
- 13 **futūram (esse)...adductūrum (esse):**  
**susceptūrum (esse):** all fut. infinitives in successive ind. discourse
- 14 **eī licere:** *that it is allowed for him*  
**sī mallet:** *if he preferred;* impf. subj. mālō
- 16 **nūllō sequente:** *no one...;* abl. abs.

## 97. THE COUNTERCHARM

Aliquantum itineris prōgressus ad vīllam magnificam pervēnit, 1  
 quam cum oculīs perlustrāsset, statim intrāre statuit; intellēxit enim  
 hanc esse eandem domum dē quā Eurylochus mentiōnem fēcisset.  
 At cum in eō esset ut limen intrāret, subitō eī obviam stetit  
 adulēscēns formā pulcherrimā aureum baculum gerēns. Hīc Ulixem 5  
 iam domum intrantem manū corripuit et, “Quō ruis?” inquit.  
 “Nonne scīs hanc esse Circēs domum? Hīc inclusī sunt amicī tuī ex  
 hūmanā speciē in porcōs conversī. Num vīs ipse in eandem  
 calamitātem venīre?” Ulices simul ac vōcem audīvit, deum  
 Mercūrium agnōvit; nūllīs tamen precibus ab institūtō cōnsiliō 10  
 dēterrērī potuit. Quod cum Mercūrius sēnsisset, herbam quandam  
 eī dedit, quam contrā carmina multum valēre dicēbat. “Hanc cape,”  
 inquit, “et ubi Circē tē baculō tetigerit, tū strictō gladiō impetum in  
 eam vidē ut faciās.” Mercūrius postquam fīnem loquendī fēcit,  
 “mortālis vīsūs mediō sermōne relīquit, 15  
 et procul in tenuem ex oculīs ēvānuit auram.”

**adulēscēns, -entis:** young (man), youth(ful), 3  
**agnoscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtūm:** to recognize, 4  
**aliquantum, -ī n.:** somewhat, 2  
**amicus, -ī m.:** friend, 6  
**aura, -ae f.:** air, breeze, 1  
**aureus, -a, -um:** golden, 13  
**baculum, -ī n.:** staff, wand, 4  
**calamitās, -tātis f.:** misfortune, calamity, 1  
**carmen, carminis n.:** song, 2  
**contrā:** against (+ acc.), 7  
**convertō, -ere, -ī, -rsus:** turn (around), 6  
**corripiō, -ere, -uī, -reptus:** snatch (up), 6  
**dēterreō, -ēre, -uī, territum:** frighten off, 1  
**domus, -ūs f.:** house, home, dwelling, 11  
**Eurylochus, -ī m.:** Eurylochus, 6  
**ēvanescō, -ere, ēvanuī:** vanish, pass away, 1  
**finis, -īs m./f.:** end, limit, border, boundary, 12  
**forma, -ae f.:** beauty, shape, form, 3  
**gladius, -ī m.:** sword, 10  
**herba, -ae f.:** plant, grass, 6  
**hūmanus, -a, -um:** cultured, refined, 4  
**impetus, -ūs m.:** attack, onset, assault, 9  
**inclūdō, -ere, -ūsī, -ūsum:** close in, shut in, 7  
**inquam, inquis, inquit:** to say, 6  
**instituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtūm:** establish, set, 1  
**intrō (1):** go into, enter, 7  
**limen, līminis n.:** threshold, 1

**loquor, loquī, locūtus sum:** speak, address, 9  
**māgnificus, -a, -um:** splendid, magnificent, 2  
**medius, -a, -um:** middle of, 10  
**mentiō, -tiōnis f.:** mention, 2  
**mortālis, -e:** mortal, 1  
**nōn-ne:** introduces a yes/no question, 1  
**num:** question expecting negative answer, 2  
**obviam:** in the way of, opposite to (+ dat.) 3  
**oculus, -ī, m.:** eye, 7  
**perlustrō (1):** look over, examine, 2  
**porcus, -ī m.:** pig, swine, 5  
**precēs, -um:** prayer, entreaty, 3  
**procul:** from afar, from a distance, 5  
**pulcher, -chra, -chrūm:** beautiful, pretty, 2  
**ruō, -ere, ruī:** rush, 2  
**sciō, -ire, -īvī (īī), -ītūs:** know, understand, 9  
**sermō, sermōnis m.:** conversation, talk, 2  
**simul:** at the same time; at once, together, 10  
**statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtūs:** establish, build, 3  
**stringō, -ere, strinxī, strictum:** to draw out, 3  
**tangō, -ere, tetigī, tactum:** to touch, 3  
**tenuis, -e:** thin, 1  
**tu:** you, 10  
**tuus, -a, -um:** your, yours, 3  
**valeō, -ēre, uī:** be strong, fare well, be able, 5  
**villa, -ae f.:** country-house, villa, 2  
**vōx, vōcis, f.:** voice, 9

## 97. THE COUNTERCHARM

- 4 **in eō esset ut:** *was in such (a place) that*  
**eī obviam:** *facing her, in the way of her*
- 5 **fōrmā pulcherrimā:** *of..; abl. quality;*  
*superlative adj.*
- 6 **Quō:** *to where?; cf. ubi and unde*
- 8 **Num vīs:** *Surely you do not wish...?; ‘you*  
*do not know...do you?’ Num anticipates a*  
*negative response, 2<sup>nd</sup> sg. pres. volō*
- 9 **simul ac:** *as soon as; ‘the same time as’*
- 10 **ab institūtō cōnsiliō:** *from his set plans*
- 11 **quod:** *this; ‘which,’ obj. of sēnsisset*
- 12 **quam...valēre:**  
**carmina:** *songs; i.e. Circe’s spells*  
**cape:** *sg. imperative capiō*
- 13 **ubi...tetigerit:** *when Circe touches; fut.*  
*pf.*
- 14 **vidē ut faciās:** *see to it that you make*
- 15 **mortālis:** *he left the sights of the mortal in*  
*the middle of the his speech and vanished*  
*from his eyes far off into the thin breeze;*  
*Aeneid 4.277-8*

## 98. THE ENCHANTRESS IS FOILED

Brevī intermissō spatiō Ulixēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda parātus 1  
 iānuam pulsāvit, et foribus patēfactīs ab ipsā Circē benignē  
 exceptus est. Omnia eōdem modō atque anteā facta sunt. Cēnam  
 magnificē instrūctam vīdit et accumbere iussus est. Mox, ubi famēs  
 cibō depulsa est, Circē pōculum aureum vīnō replētum Ulixī dedit. 5  
 Ille etsī suspicātus est venēnum sibi parātum esse, pōculum  
 exhausit; quō factō Circē postquam caput eius baculō tetigit, ea  
 verba locūta est quibus sociōs eius anteā in porcōs converterat. Rēs  
 tamen omnīnō aliter ēvēnit atque illa sperāverat. Tanta enim vīs  
 erat eius herbae quam Ulixī Mercūrius dederat ut neque venēnum 10  
 neque verba quicquam efficere possent. Ulixēs autem, ut eī  
 praeceptum erat, gladiō strictō impetum in eam fēcit et mortem  
 minitābātur. Circē cum artem suam nihil valēre sēnsisset, multīs  
 cum lacrimīs eum obsecrāre coepit nē sibi vītam adimeret.

accubō, -ere, accubuī: to lie (at dinner), 4  
 adimō, -ere, -ēmī: take away, deprive, 1  
 aliter: otherwise, in another way, 3  
 antea: before, earlier, formerly, previously, 7  
 ars, artis f.: skill, craft, art, 5  
 aureus, -a, -um: golden, 13  
 baculum, -ī n.: staff, wand, 4  
 benignus, -a, -um: kind, 4  
 cēna, -ae f.: dinner, 5  
 cibus, -ī m.: food, 5  
 convertō, -ere, -ī, -rsus: turn (around), 6  
 dēpellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum: drive away, 3  
 efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus: make, form, 3  
 etsī: even if, although, though, 13  
 ēveniō, -ire: turn out, happen, 8  
 excipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptum: receive, welcome 9  
 exhauriō, -ire, -ausī, -austum: drink up, 1  
 famēs, -is f.: hunger, 3  
 foris, -is f.: door, entrance, 1  
 gladius, -ī m.: sword, 10  
 herba, -ae f.: plant, grass, 6  
 ianua, -ae f.: door, 2  
 impetus, -ūs m.: attack, onset, assault, 9  
 instruō, -ere, -ūxī, -uctum: equip, draw up, 6  
 intermittō, -ere: interrupt, break off, 5  
 lacrima, -ae f.: tear, 10

1 Brevī...spatiō: abl. abs.

ad...subeunda: for undergoing...; subeō

3 eōdem...atque: in the same way as before

loquor, loquī, locūtus sum: speak, address, 9  
 magnificē: magnificently, splendidly, 1  
 Mercurius, -ī m.: Mercury, 8  
 minitor, -ārī, -ātus sum: threaten, 1  
 mors, mortis, f.: death, 9  
 obsecrō (1): beseech, implore, entreat, 5  
 omnīnō: altogether, wholly, entirely, 11  
 patefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum: to lay open, 2  
 pōculum, -ī n.: cup, 7  
 porcus, -ī m.: pig, swine, 5  
 praecipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum: order, take, 6  
 pulsō (1): to strike against, knock, 3  
 quisquam, quidquam: anyone, anything, 4  
 repleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētum: fill again, fill, 4  
 spatium, -ī n.: space, span, extent, 6  
 spērō (1): hope (for), expect, 5  
 stringō, -ere, strinxī, strictum: to draw out, 3  
 subeō, -ire, -ī: to undergo, go up (to), 5  
 suspicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum: suspect, mistrust, 7  
 tangō, -ere, tetigī, tactum: to touch, 3  
 valeō, -ēre, uī: be strong, fare well, be able, 5  
 venēnum, -ī n.: poison, 7  
 venēnum, -ī n.: poison, 7  
 verbum, -ī n.: word, speech, 4  
 vīta, -ae, f.: life, 9

7 quō factō: this done; abl. abs.

ea verba: neuter acc. object. of locūta est

9 aliter...atque: otherwise...than

## 98. THE ENCHANTRESS IS FOILED

- ēvēnit: *it turned out; impersonal*  
10 eius herbae: *of that plant; with vīs*  
ut...possent: *that...; result clause*  
11 ut praeceptum erat: *as it had been*  
*instructed; impersonal passive*
- 12 in eam: *against her*  
13 nihil valēre: *was not at all prevailing;*  
ind. disc., artem, ‘craft,’ is acc. subj.  
14 nē...adimeret: *that...; ind. command*  
sibi: *from her; dat. of compound verb*

## 99. MEN ONCE MORE

Ulixēs autem ubi sēnsit eam timōre perterritam esse, postulāvit ut sociōs suōs sine morā in hūmanam speciem rēdūceret (certior enim factus erat ā deō Mercuriō eōs in porcōs conversōs esse); nisi id factum esset, sē debitās poenās sumptūrum ostendit. Circē hīs rēbus graviter commōta eī ad pedēs sē proīecit, et multīs cum lacrimīs iūre iurandō cōfirmāvit sē quae ille imperāset omnia factūram. Tum porcōs in atrium immittī iussit. Illi datō signō irruērunt, et cum ducem suum agnōvissent, magnō dolōre affectī sunt quod nūllō modō eum dē rēbus suīs certiōrem facere poterant. Circē tamen unguentō quōdam corpora eōrum ūnxit; quō factō sunt omnēs statim in hūmanam speciem reductī. Magnō cum gaudiō Ulixēs suōs amīcōs agnōvit, et nūntium ad lītus mīsit, quī reliquīs Graecīs sociōs receptōs esse diceret. Illī autem hīs rēbus cognitīs statim ad domum Circaeam sē contulērunt; quō cum vēnissent, universī laetitiae sē dēdērunt.

**afficiō, -ere, -fēcī, fectum:** influence, treat, 13  
**agnoscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtum:** to recognize, 4  
**amīcus, -ī m.:** friend, 6  
**atrium, atrīi n.:** atrium, 3  
**certus, -a, -um:** fixed, sure, 11  
**Circaeus, -a, -um:** of Circe, 1  
**confirmō (1):** make strong, strengthen, 5  
**convertō, -ere, -ī, -rsus:** turn (around), 6  
**debeō, -ere, -uī, debitum:** to owe, ought, 2  
**domus, -ūs f.:** house, home, dwelling, 11  
**dux, ducis m/f.:** leader, guide, chieftain, 5  
**gaudium, -īi n.:** gladness, joy, 9  
**hūmānus, -a, -um:** cultured, refined, 4  
**immittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum:** send, et in, 2  
**imperō (1):** order, command, 12  
**inruō, -ere, -ruī:** rush in, 1  
**iurō (1):** to swear, 2  
**iūs, iūris n.:** justice, law, right, 4  
**lacrima, -ae f.:** tear, 10

- 2 **certior factus erat:** he had been informed...that; ‘made more certain’
- 3 **factum esset:** if this had not been done; plpf. subj.; id is a demonstrative
- 4 **sē...sumptūrum (esse):** would exact; fut. inf. in ind. disc., supply ‘esse’  
**eī: his;** dat. of possession
- 5 **iūre iurandō:** by sworn oath; ‘by an oath to be sworn,’ gerundive; abl. of means  
**sē...factūram (esse):** that she...; omnia is obj. and antecedent of quae
- 6 **immittī:** pres. pass. inf. immittō

**laetitia, -ae f.:** joy, happiness, 3  
**Mercurius, -ī m.:** Mercury, 8  
**mora, -ae f.:** delay, hesitation, hindrance, 14  
**nisi:** if not, unless, 2  
**nuntius, -īi m.:** messenger, 12  
**ostendō (1):** show, display, 6  
**perterreō, -ēre:** frighten, terrify, 5  
**pēs, pedis m.:** foot, 8  
**poena, poenae, f.:** punishment, 3  
**porcus, -ī m.:** pig, swine, 5  
**postulō (1):** demand, claim, request, ask, 11  
**proiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum:** throw forth, 4  
**recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum:** take back, 8  
**redūcō, -ere, -xī, -ctus:** lead or bring back, 11  
**signum, -īi n.:** sign, signal, 2  
**sumō, sumere, sumpsī, sumptum:** to take, 3  
**ung(u)ō, -ere, unxī, unctum:** to oil, anoint, 1  
**unguentum, -ī m.:** ointment, 3  
**universus, -a, -um:** entire, whole, 1

- 7 **magnō..affectī:** afflicted by great pain
- 8 **nūllō modō:** in no way; abl. of manner  
**eum...certiōrem facere:** to inform him;
- 9 **quō factō:** this done; abl. abs.  
**sunt...reductī:** pf. pass. redūcō
- 10 **quī...diceret:** who would say...; purpose
- 11 **reliquīs Graecīs:** to...; dat. ind. object  
**sociōs receptōs esse:** that the comrades had been taken back; pf. pass. inf. recipiō
- 13 **sē contulērunt:** carried themselves; ‘went’  
**quō: to there;** ‘to where’  
**laetitia: to joy;** dat. ind. obj.

## 100. AFLOAT AGAIN

Postrīdiē eius diēt Ulixēs ex hāc insulā quam celerrimē discēdere in 1  
animō habēbat. Circē tamen cum haec cognōvisset, ex odiō ad amōrem  
conversa omnibus precibus eum orāre et obtestārī coepit ut paucōs diēs  
apud sē morāretur; quā rē tandem impetrātā, tanta beneficia in eum  
contulit ut facile eī persuāsum sit ut diūtius manēret. Postquam tamen 5  
tōtum annum apud Circēn cōnsūmpserat, Ulixēs magnō desideriō patriae  
suae mōtus est. Sociīs igitur ad sē convocātīs quid in animō habēret  
ostendit. Ubi tamen ad lītus descendit, nāvem suam tempestātibus tam  
afflictam invēnit ut ad navigandum paene inūtilis esset. Hāc rē cognitā  
omnia quae ad nāvēs reficiendās ūsuī essent comparārī iussit, quā in rē 10  
tantam diligentiam omnēs adhibēbant ut ante tertium diem opus  
perfēcerint. At Circē ubi omnia ad profectiōnem parāta esse vīdit, rem  
aegrē ferēbat et Ulixem vehementer obsecrābat ut eō consiliō desisteret.  
Ille tamen, nē annī tempore ā navigatiōne excluderētur, mātūrandum sibi  
existimāvit, et tempestātem idōneam nactus nāvem solvit. Multa quidem 15  
pericula Ulixī subeunda erant antequam in patriam suam pervēnīret, quae  
tamen hōc locō longum est perscrībere.

**adfligō, -ere, -flīxi, -flīctum:** dash, shatter, 1  
**adhibeō, -ere, -uī, -itum:** to apply, hold to, 4  
**aegrē:** with difficulty, wearily, 4  
**amor, -ōris m.:** love, desire, pasfansion, 3  
**ante:** before, in front of (acc.); adv. before, 5  
**antequam:** before, 9  
**apud:** among, in the presence of (+ acc.), 9  
**beneficiūm, -ī n.:** benefit, favor; kindness, 8  
**comparō (1):** prepare, collect, 4  
**consumō, -ere, -mpsī, -mptum:** take, spend 9  
**convertō, -ere, -ī, -rsus:** turn (around), 6  
**convocō (1):** to call together, 3  
**dēscendō, -ere, -ndī, -nsum:** descend, 4  
**desideriūm, -ī n.:** desire, longing, 1  
**dēsistō, -ere, -stītī, -stītum:** desist, stop, 5  
**diligentia, -ae f.:** diligence, attentiveness, 5  
**discēdō, -ere, -ssi, -ssum:** go away, depart, 4  
**diū:** a long time, long, 13  
**exclūdō, -ere, -ūsī, -ūsum:** shut out, hinder, 2  
**existimō (1):** judge, consider, regard, think, 2  
**facilis, -e:** easy, 1  
**ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus:** carry, bear, endure, 10  
**idōneus, -a, -um:** suitable, appropriate, 12  
**impetrō (1):** to obtain, gain one's end, 1  
**inutilis, -e:** not useful, useless, 1  
**inveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum:** find, discover 8  
**longus, -a, -um:** long, 4

**maneō, -ēre, mansī, --:** to stay, wait, 9  
**maturō (1):** to hasten, ripen, 7  
**moror, -ārī, -ātus sum:** delay, linger, 3  
**nanciscor, nancisci, nactus:** attain, meet, 7  
**nāvīgatiō, -ōnis f.:** sailing, voyage, 2  
**navigō (1):** to sail, 5  
**obsecrō (1):** beseech, implore, entreat, 5  
**obtestor, -ārī, ātum:** call to witness, implore  
**odium, -īū n.:** hatred, 1  
**opus, -eris n.:** work, deed, toil, 9  
**ōrō (1):** pray (for), entreat, beseech, 5  
**ostendō (1):** show, display, 6  
**paene:** almost, nearly, 8  
**patria, -ae f.:** fatherland, country, 8  
**perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum:** accomplish, 3  
**perscrībō, -ere, -ipsī, -iptum:** write fully, 3  
**persuādeō, -ere, -suāsī, -suāsum:** persuade, 9  
**postrīdiē:** the day after, the next day, 4  
**precēs, -um:** prayer, entreaty, 3  
**profectiō, -tiōnis f.:** departure, start, 3  
**quidem:** indeed, in fact, assuredly, certainly, 8  
**reficiō, -ere, fēcī, -fectum:** renew, make new 2  
**subeō, -īre, -ītī:** to undergo, go up (to), 5  
**tam:** so, so much, so very, such, 8  
**tertius, -a, -um:** third, 2  
**ūsus, ūsūs m.:** use, employment, 3  
**vehementer:** strongly, violently, ardently, 11

## 100. AFLOAT AGAIN

- 1 **postridiē eius diēi**: *the day after that day*; abl. time when; gen.  
**quam celerrimē**: *as fast as possible*  
**in animō**: *had in mind*; i.e. intended
- 2 **haec**: *these (things)*; neuter pl. acc. obj.
- 3 **omnibus precibus**: abl. means, with **ōrāre**  
**ut...morārētur**: *that he linger...*; ind. command  
**paucōs diēs**: *for...*; acc. of duration of time
- 4 **apud sē**: *at her house*  
**quā rē imperātā**: *which matter having been attained*; abl. abs. i.e. Circe got what she had requested above
- 5 **contulit**: pf. conferō, Circe is subject  
**ut...persuāsum sit**: *that she persuaded him*; impersonal pf. pass., translate active  
**ut...manēret**: *that...*; ind. command  
**diūtius**: *longer*; comparative adv.
- 6 **apud Circēn**: *at Circe's house*  
**patriae suae**: *for his country*; objective gen. governed by desideriō
- 7 **sociis convocatis**: abl. abs. or dat. i.o.  
**Quid...habēret**: ind. question
- 8 **tam afflictam**: *so dashed*; PPP
- 9 **ut...esset**: *that...*; result, impf. subj. sum  
**ad navigandum**: *for...*; ad + acc., here a gerund expresses purpose
- 10 **quae...ūsui essent**: *who were of use*; dat. purpose; omnia is antecedent  
**ad nāvēs reficiendās**: *for...*; employ a gerund-gerundive flip; translate the gerundive (adj) as a gerund with obj.
- 11 **ut...perfēcerint**: *that...*; result; unusual pf. subj., translate in the pf. tense
- 12 **ad profectiōnem**: *for setting out*
- 13 **ferēbat**: *endured*  
**eō cōnsiliō**: *from this purpose*; separation
- 14 **nē...excluderētur**: neg. purpose clause  
**mātūrandum (esse)**: *that it had to be hastened by him*; i.e. ‘he had to hasten,’ passive periphrastic in secondary seq. with dat. of agent
- 16 **subeunda erant**: *had to be undergone*; passive periphrastic with dat. of agent  
**quae**: *which (dangers)*; obj. of perscribere
- 17 **longum est**: *it is long*; nom. predicate

	<u>1st Declension</u>		<u>2nd Declension (m.)</u>		<u>2nd Declension (n.)</u>	
Nom.	<b>copia</b>	<b>copiae</b>	<b>legatus</b>	<b>legatī</b>	<b>proelium</b>	<b>proelia</b>
Gen.	<b>copiae</b>	<b>copiārum</b>	<b>legatī</b>	<b>legatōrum</b>	<b>proeliī</b>	<b>proeliōrum</b>
Dat.	<b>copiae</b>	<b>copīs</b>	<b>legatō</b>	<b>legatīs</b>	<b>proeliō</b>	<b>proeliīs</b>
Acc.	<b>copiam</b>	<b>copīs</b>	<b>legatum</b>	<b>legatōs</b>	<b>proelium</b>	<b>proelia</b>
Abl.	<b>copiā</b>	<b>copīs</b>	<b>legatō</b>	<b>legatīs</b>	<b>proeliō</b>	<b>proeliīs</b>
	<u>3rd Declension (m/f)</u>		<u>3rd Declension (n.)</u>			
Nom.	mīles	mīlites			iter	itinera
Gen.	mīlitīs	mīlitum			itineris	itinерum
Dat.	mīlitī	mīlitibus			itinerī	itinерibus
Acc.	mīlitem	mīlites			iter	itinera
Abl.	mīlite	mīlitibus			itinere	itinерibus
	<u>4th Declension (m/f)</u>		<u>4th Declension (n.)</u>			
Nom.	<b>manus</b>	<b>manūs</b>			<b>cornū</b>	<b>cornua</b>
Gen.	<b>manūs</b>	<b>manuum</b>			<b>cornūs</b>	<b>cornuum</b>
Dat.	<b>manuī</b>	<b>manibus</b>			<b>cornū</b>	<b>cornuibus</b>
Acc.	<b>manum</b>	<b>manūs</b>			<b>cornū</b>	<b>cornua</b>
Abl.	<b>manū</b>	<b>manibus</b>			<b>cornū</b>	<b>cornuibus</b>
	<u>5th Declension (m/f)</u>					
Nom.	rēs	rēs				
Gen.	rēi	rērum				
Dat.	rēi	rēbus				
Acc.	rem	rēs				
Abl.	rē	rēbus				
	<u>Selected Pronouns</u>					
Nom.	is	he	ea	she	id	it
Gen.	eius	his	eius	her	eius	its
Dat.	eī	to/for him	eī	to/for her	eī	to/for it
Acc.	eum	him	eam	her	id	it
Abl.	eō	with/from him	eā	with/from her	eō	with/from it
Nom.	eī	they	eae	they	ea	they
Gen.	eōrum	their	eārum	their	eōrum	their
Dat.	eīs	to/for them	eīs	to/for them	eīs	to/for them
Acc.	eōs	them	eās	them	ea	them
Abl.	eīs	with/from them	eīs	with/from them	eīs	with/from them
Nom.	quī	que	quod	quī	que	who, which, that
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	whose, of whom/which
Dat.	cūī	cūī	cūī	quibus	quibus	to whom/which
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	whom, which, that
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	by/with/from whom/which

Nom.	ille	illa	illud	<i>that</i>	hic	haec	hoc	<i>this</i>
Gen.	illīus	illīus	illīus	<i>of that</i>	huius	huius	huius	<i>of this</i>
Dat.	illī	illī	illī	<i>to/for that</i>	huic	huic	huic	<i>to/for this</i>
Acc.	illum	illam	illud	<i>that</i>	hunc	hanc	hoc	<i>this</i>
Abl.	illō	illā	illō	<i>with/from that</i>	hōc	hāc	hōc	<i>b/w/f this</i>
Nom.	illī	illae	illa	<i>those</i>	hī	hae	haec	<i>these</i>
Gen.	illōrum	illārum	illōrum	<i>of those</i>	hōrum	hārum	hōrum	<i>of these</i>
Dat.	illīs	illīs	illīs	<i>to those</i>	hīs	hīs	hīs	<i>to these</i>
Acc.	illōs	illās	illa	<i>those</i>	hōs	hās	haec	<i>these</i>
Abl.	illīs	illīs	illīs	<i>with/from those</i>	hīs	hīs	hīs	<i>with/from these</i>

---

	reflexive pronoun	possessive reflexive adjective					
Nom.	---	suus	sua	suum	suī	suae	sua
Gen.	suī	suī	suae	suī	suōrum	suārum	suōrum
Dat.	sibi	suō	suae	suō	suīs	suīs	suīs
Acc.	sē	suum	suam	suum	suōs	suās	sua
Abl.	sē	suō	suā	suō	suīs	suīs	suīs

---

### Adjectives and Adverbs

Decl.	Positive	Comparative	Superlative
1 <sup>st</sup> /2 <sup>nd</sup>	altus, -a, -um <i>high (deep)</i>	altior, altius <i>higher (deeper)</i>	altissimus, -a, -um <i>highest, very high (deepest)</i>
3 <sup>rd</sup>	fortis, forte <i>brave</i>	fortior, fortius <i>braver, more brave</i>	fortissimus, -a, -um <i>bravest, most brave, very brave</i>
1 <sup>st</sup> /2 <sup>nd</sup>	altē <i>deeply</i>	altius <i>more deeply</i>	altissimē <i>very deeply</i>
3 <sup>rd</sup>	fortiter <i>bravely</i>	fortius <i>more bravely</i>	fortissimē <i>very bravely</i>

### Irregular Adjectives and Adverbs

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
bonus, -a, -um <i>good</i>	melior, melius <i>better</i>	optimus, -a, -um <i>best</i>
magnus, -a, -um <i>great</i>	maior, maius <i>greater</i>	maximus, -a, -um <i>greatest</i>
parvus, -a, -um <i>small</i>	minor, minus <i>smaller</i>	minimus, -a, -um <i>smallest</i>
multus, -a, -um <i>much</i>	---, plus <i>more</i>	plurimus, -a, -um <i>most</i>

**amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum:** to love

	active	translation	passive	translation
<b>Indicative</b>				
Pres.	amō amās amat	amāmus amātis amant	amor amāris amātur	I am loved
Impf.	amābam amābās amābat	amābāmus amābātis amābant	amābar amābāris amābātūr	I was being loved
Fut.	amābō amābis amābit	amābimus amābitis amābunt	amābōr amāberis amābitur	I will be loved
Perf.	amāvī amāvistī amāvit	amāvimus amāvistis amāvērunt	amāta sum amāta es amāta est	I have been loved was loved
Plpf.	amāveram amāverās amāverat	amāverāmus amāverātis amāverant	amāta eram amāta erās amāta erat	I had been loved
Fut. Pf	amāverō amāveris amāverit	amāverimus amāveritis amāverint	amāta ero amāta eris amāta erit	I will have been loved
<b>Subjunctive</b>				
Pres.	amem amēs amet	amēmus amētis ament	amer amēris ametur	same as indicative
Impf.	amārem amārēs amāret	amārēmus amārētis amārent	amārer amārēris amāretur	amārēmur amārēminī amārentur
Perf.	amāverim amāverīs amāverit	amāverīmus amāverītis amāverint	amāta sim amāta sīs amāta sit	amātae sīmus amātae sītis amātae sint
Plpf.	amāvissēm amāvissēs amāvissēt	amāvissēmus amāvissētis amāvissent	amāta essem amāta essēs amāta esset	amātae essēmus amātae essētis amātae essent
<b>Imperative</b>				
	amā	amāte	love!	
<b>Participle</b>				
Pres.	amāns (amantis)	loving		
Perf.			amātus, -a, -um	having been loved
Fut.	amātūrus, -a, -um	going to love	amandus, -a, -um	going to be loved
<b>Infinitive</b>				
Pres.	amāre	to love	amārī	to be love
Perf.	amāvisse	to have loved	amātūm esse	to have been loved
Fut.	amātūrum esse	to be going to loved		

**videō, vidēre, vīdī, visum: to see**

	active		translation	passive	translation
<b>Indicative</b>					
Pres.	videō	vidēmus	<i>I see</i>	videor	vidēmur
	vidēs	vidētis		vidēris	vidēminī
	videt	vident		videtur	videntur
Impf.	vidēbam	vidēbāmus	<i>I was seeing</i>	vidēbar	vidēbāmūr
	vidēbās	vidēbātis		vidēbāris	vidēbāmīnī
	vidēbat	vidēbant		vidēbātūr	vidēbāntūr
Fut.	vidēbō	vidēbimus	<i>I will see</i>	vidēbōr	vidēbimur
	vidēbis	vidēbitis		vidēberis	vidēbimīnī
	vidēbit	vidēbunt		vidēbitur	vidēbuntur
Perf.	vīdī	vīdimus	<i>I have seen</i>	vīsa sum	vīsae sumus
	vīdistī	vīdistis		vīsa es	vīsae estis
	vīdit	vīdērunt		vīsa est	vīsae sunt
Plpf.	vīderam	vīderāmus	<i>I had seen</i>	vīsa eram	vīsae erāmus
	vīderās	vīderātis		vīsa erās	vīsae erātis
	vīderat	vīderant		vīsa erat	vīsae erant
Fut.pf.	vīderō	vīderimus	<i>I will have</i>	vīsa erō	vīsae erimus
	vīderis	vīderitis	<i>seen</i>	vīsa eris	vīsae eritis
	vīderit	vīderint		vīsa erit	vīsae erunt
<b>Subjunctive</b>					
Pres.	videām	videāmus	same as	videar	videāmūr
	videās	videātis	indicative	videāris	videāmīnī
	videat	videant		videatur	videantur
Impf.	vidērem	vidērēmus		vidērer	vidērēmūr
	vidērēs	vidērētis		vidērēris	vidērēmīnī
	vidēret	vidērent		vidērētūr	vidērentūr
Perf.	vīderim	vīderīmus		vīsa sim	vīsae sīmus
	vīderīs	vīderītis		vīsa sīs	vīsae sītis
	vīderit	vīderint		vīsa sit	vīsae sint
Plpf.	vīdissem	vīdissēmus		vīsa essem	vīsae essēmus
	vīdissēs	vīdissētis		vīsa essēs	vīsae essētis
	vīdisset	vīdissent		vīsa esset	vīsae essent
<b>Imperative</b>					
	vidē	vidēte	<i>see!</i>		
<b>Participle</b>					
Pres.	vidēns (vidētis)		<i>seeing</i>		
Perf.				vīsus, -a, -um	<i>having been seen</i>
Fut.	vīsūrus, -a, -um		<i>going to see</i>	vidēndus, -a, -um	<i>going to be seen</i>
<b>Infinitive</b>					
Pres.	vidēre		<i>to see</i>	vidērī	<i>to be seen</i>
Perf.	vīdisse		<i>to have seen</i>	vīsum esse	<i>to have been seen</i>
Fut.	vīsūrum esse		<i>to be going to see</i>		

**dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum: to lead**

	active	translation	passive	translation
<b>Indicative</b>				
Pres.	dūcō	dūcimus <i>I lead</i>	dūcor	dūcimur <i>I am led</i>
	dūcīs	dūcītis	dūceris	dūcīminī
	dūcīt	dūcīunt	dūcītūr	dūcīuntūr
Impf.	dūcēbam	dūcēbāmus <i>I was leading</i>	dūcēbar	dūcēbāmūr <i>I was being led</i>
	dūcēbās	dūcēbātis	dūcēbāris	dūcēbāmīnī
	dūcēbāt	dūcēbānt	dūcēbātūr	dūcēbāntūr
Fut.	dūcam	dūcēmus <i>I will lead</i>	dūcar	dūcēmūr <i>I will be led</i>
	dūcēs	dūcētis	dūcēris	dūcēmīnī
	dūcēt	dūcēnt	dūcētūr	dūcēntūr
Perf.	dūxī	dūxīmus <i>I have led</i>	ducta sum	ductae sumus <i>I have been led</i>
	dūxīstī	dūxīstis	ducta es	ductae estis
	dūxīt	dūxīrunt	ducta est	ductae sunt
Plpf.	dūxeram	dūxerāmus <i>I had led</i>	ducta erām	ductae erāmūs <i>I had been led</i>
	dūxerās	dūxerātis	ducta erās	ductae erātis
	dūxerat	dūxerant	ducta erat	ductae erant
Fut. Pf	dūxerō	dūxerīmus <i>I will have led</i>	ducta erō	ductae erīmūs <i>I will have been led</i>
	dūxerīs	dūxerītis	ducta erīs	ductae erītis
	dūxerit	dūxerint	ducta erīt	ductae erūnt
<b>Subjunctive</b>				
Pres.	dūcam	dūcāmus same as dūcās      dūcātis indicative	dūcar	dūcāmūr same as dūcāt      dūcāminī indicative
	dūcat	dūcant	dūcatur	dūcantūr
Impf.	dūcerem	dūcerēmus	dūcerer	dūcerēmūr
	dūcerēs	dūcerētis	dūcerēris	dūcerēmīnī
	dūceret	dūcerent	dūceretur	dūcerentūr
Perf.	dūxerīm	dūxerīmus	ducta sīm	ductae sīmūs
	dūxerīs	dūxerītis	ducta sīs	ductae sītis
	dūxerit	dūxerint	ducta sīt	ductae sint
Plpf.	dūxissem	dūxissēmus	ducta essem	ductae essēmūs
	dūxissēs	dūxissētis	ducta essēs	ductae essētis
	dūxisset	dūxissent	ducta esset	ductae essent
<b>Imperative</b>				
	dūc	ducite <i>lead!</i>		
<b>Participle</b>				
Pres.	ducēns (dūcentis)	<i>leading</i>		
Perf.			ductus, -a, -um	<i>having been led</i>
Fut.	ductūrus, -a, -um	<i>going to lead</i>	ducendus, -a, -um	<i>going to be led</i>
<b>Infinitive</b>				
Pres.	dūcere	<i>to lead</i>	dūcī	<i>to be lead</i>
Perf.	dūxisse	<i>to have led</i>	ductum esse	<i>to have been led</i>
Fut.	ductūrum esse	<i>to be going to led</i>		

**capiō, capere, cēpī, captum: to take**

	active	translation	passive	translation
<b>Indicative</b>				
Pres.	capiō	capimus <i>I take</i>	capior	capimur <i>I am taken</i>
	capis	capitis	caperis	capiminī
	capit	capiunt	capitur	capuntur
Impf.	capiēbam	capiēbāmus <i>I was taking</i>	capiēbar	capiēbāmur <i>I was being taken</i>
	capiēbās	capiēbātis	capiēbāris	capiēbāminī
	capiēbat	capiēbant	capiēbātur	capiēbāntur
Fut.	capiam	capiēmus <i>I will take</i>	capiar	capiēmur <i>I will be taken</i>
	capiēs	capiētis	capiēris	capiēminī
	capiet	capiēt	capietur	capiētūr
Perf.	cēpī	cēpimus <i>I have taken</i>	capta sum	captae sumus <i>I have been taken</i>
	cēpistī	cēpistis	capta es	captae estis <i>was taken</i>
	cēpit	cēpērunt	capta est	captae sunt
Plpf.	cēperam	cēperāmus <i>I had taken</i>	capta eram	captae erāmus <i>I had been taken</i>
	cēperās	cēperātis	capta erās	captae erātis
	cēperat	cēperant	capta erat	captae erant
Fut. Pf	cēperō	cēperimus <i>I will have taken</i>	capta erō	captae erimus <i>I will have been taken</i>
	cēperis	cēperitis	capta eris	captae eritis
	cēperit	cēperint	capta erit	captae erunt
<b>Subjunctive</b>				
Pres.	capam	capāmus same as	capar	capāmur same as
	capās	capātis indicative	capāris	capāminī
	capat	capant	capatur	capantur
Impf.	caperem	caperēmus	caperer	caperēmur
	caperēs	caperētis	caperēris	caperēminī
	caperet	caperent	caperetur	caperentur
Perf.	cēperim	cēperīmus	capta sim	captae sīmus
	cēperīs	cēperītis	capta sīs	captae sītis
	cēperit	cēperint	capta sit	captae sint
Plpf.	cēpissem	cēpissemus	capta essem	captae essēmus
	cēpissēs	cēpissētis	capta essēs	captae essētis
	cēpisset	cēpissent	capta esset	captae essent
<b>Imperative</b>				
	cape	capite	take!	
<b>Participle</b>				
Pres.	capiēns (capiēntis)	<i>taking</i>		
Perf.			captus, -a, -um	<i>having been taken</i>
Fut.	captūrus, -a, -um	<i>going to take</i>	capiēndus, -a, -um	<i>going to be taken</i>
<b>Infinitive</b>				
Pres.	capere	<i>to take</i>	cāpī	<i>to be take</i>
Perf.	cēpisse	<i>to have taken</i>	cāptum esse	<i>to have been taken</i>
Fut.	captūrum esse	<i>to be going to taken</i>		

**audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītūm: to hear**

	active	translation	passive	translation
<b>Indicative</b>				
Pres.	audīō audīs audīit	audīmus <i>I hear</i> audītis audiunt	audīor audīris audītur	audīmur audīminī audiuntur
Impf.	audiēbam audiēbās audiēbat	audiēbāmus <i>I was hearing</i> audiēbātis audiēbant	audiēbar audiēbāris audiēbātur	audiēbāmur audiēbāminī audiēbāntur
Fut.	audiam audiēs audiet	audiēmus <i>I will hear</i> audiētis audiēnt	audiar audiēris audiētūr	audiēmur audiēminī audiēntur
Perf.	audīvī audīvistī audīvit	audīvimus <i>I have heard</i> audīvistis audīvērunt	audīta sum audīta es audīta est	audītae sumus audītae estis audītae sunt
Plpf.	audīveram audīverās audīverat	audīverāmus <i>I had heard</i> audīverātis audīverant	audīta eram audīta erās audīta erat	audītae erāmus audītae erātis audītae erant
Fut.pf	audīverō audīveris audīverit	audīverimus <i>I will have heard</i> audīveritis audīverint	audīta erō audīta eris audīta erit	audītae erimus audītae eritis audītae erunt
<b>Subjunctive</b>				
Pres.	audiam audiās audiat	audiāmus audiātis audiānt	same as indicative	audiār audiāris audiātūr
Impf.	audīrem audīrēs audīret	audīrēmus audīrētis audīrent		audīrēr audīrēris audīrētūr
Perf.	audīverim audīverīs audīverit	audīverīmus audīverītis audīverint		audīta sim audīta sīs audīta sit
Plpf.	audīvissem audīvissēs audīvisset	audīvissēmus audīvissētis audīvissent		audīta essem audīta essēs audīta esset
<b>Imperative</b>				
	audī	audīte	<i>hear!</i>	
<b>Participle</b>				
Pres.	audiēns (audientis)	<i>hearing</i>		
Perf.			audītus, -a, -um	<i>having been heard</i>
Fut.	audītūrus, -a, -um	<i>going to hear</i>	audiendus, -a, -um	<i>going to be heard</i>
<b>Infinitive</b>				
Pres.	audīre	<i>to hear</i>	audīrī	<i>to be heard</i>
Perf.	audīvisse	<i>to have heard</i>	audītūm esse	<i>to have been heard</i>
Fut.	audītūrum esse	<i>to be going to heard</i>		

sum, esse, fuī, futūrum: to be				possum, posse, potuī, -- : to be able, can			
			translation				translation
<b>Indicative</b>							
Pres.	sum	sumus	<i>I am</i>	possum	possumus	<i>I am able, can</i>	
	es	estis		potes	potestis		
	es	estis		potes	potestis		
Impf.	eram	erāmus	<i>I was</i>	poteram	poterāmus	<i>I was able, could</i>	
	erās	erātis		poterās	poterātis		
	erat	erant		poterat	poterant		
Fut.	erō	erimus	<i>I will be</i>	poterō	poterimus	<i>I will be able</i>	
	eris	eritis		poteris	poteritis		
	erit	erunt		poterit	poterunt		
Perf.	fuī	fuimus	<i>I have been,</i>	potuī	potuimus	<i>I have been able,</i>	
	fuistī	fuistis	<i>I was</i>	potuistī	potuistis	<i>I was able, could</i>	
	fuit	fuērunt		potuit	potuērunt		
Plpf.	fueram	fuerāmus	<i>I had been</i>	potueram	potuerāmus	<i>I had been able</i>	
	fuerās	fuerātis		potuerās	potuerātis		
	fuerat	fuerant		potuerat	potuerant		
Fut. Pf.	fuerō	fuerimus	<i>I will have been</i>	potuerō	potuerimus	<i>I will have been able</i>	
	fueris	fueritis	<i>been</i>	potueris	potueritis		
	fuerit	fuerint		potuerit	potuerint		
<b>Subjunctive</b>							
Pres.	sim	sīmus	same as	possim	possīmus	same as	
	sīs	sītis	indicative	possīs	possītis		
	sit	sint		possit	possint		
Impf.	essem	essēmus		possem	possēmus		
	essēs	essētis		possēs	possētis		
	esset	essent		posset	possent		
Perf.	fuerim	fuerīmus		potuerim	potuerīmus		
	fuerīs	fuerītis		potuerīs	potuerītis		
	fuerit	fuerint		potuerit	potuerint		
Plpf.	fuissem	fuissēmus		potuissem	potuissēmus		
	fuissēs	fuissētis		potuissēs	potuissētis		
	fuisset	fuissent		potuisset	potuissent		
<b>Imperative</b>							
	xxx			xxx			
<b>Infinitive</b>							
Pres.	esse		<i>to be</i>	posse		<i>to be able</i>	
Perf.	fuisse		<i>to have been</i>	potuisse		<i>to have been heard</i>	
Fut.	futūrum esse*		<i>to be going to be</i>	----			

\* *fore* is a common indeclinable alternative for *futūrum esse*.

**sequō, sequī, secūtus-a-um sum: to follow**

**Indicative**

Pres.	sequor	sequimur	<i>I follow</i>
	sequeris	sequiminī	
	sequitur	sequuntur	
Impf.	sequēbar	sequēbāmur	<i>I was following</i>
	sequēbāris	sequēbāminī	
	sequēbātur	sequēbantur	
Fut.	sequar	sequēmūr	<i>I will follow</i>
	sequēris	sequēminī	
	sequētur	sequentur	
Perf.	secūta sum	secūtae sumus	<i>I have followed</i>
	secūta es	secūtae estis	
	secūta est	secūtae sunt	
Plpf.	secūta eram	secūtae erāmus	<i>I had followed</i>
	secūta erās	secūtae erātis	
	secūta erat	secūtae erant	
Fut.. pf.	secūta erō	secūtae erimus	<i>I will have followed</i>
	secūta eris	secūtae eritis	
	secūta erit	secūtae erunt	

**Subjunctive**

Pres.	sequar	sequāmūr	same as indicative
	sequāris	sequāminī	
	sequātur	sequantur	
Impf.	sequerer	sequerēmūr	
	sequerēris	sequerēminī	
	sequerētur	sequerentur	
Perf.	secūta sim	secūtae sīmus	
	secūta sīs	secūtae sītis	
	secūta sit	secūtae sint	
Plpf.	secūta essem	secūtae essēmus	
	secūta essēs	secūtae essētis	
	secūta esset	secūtae essent	

**Imperative**

sequere	sequitor	<i>follow!</i>
---------	----------	----------------

**Participle**

Pres.	sequēns (gen. sequentis)	<i>following</i>
Perf.	secūtus, -a, -um	<i>having followed</i>
Fut.	secūtūrus, -a, -um	<i>going to follow</i>

sequendus,-a -um    *going to be followed*

**Infinitive**

Pres.	sequī	<i>to follow</i>
Perf.	secūtum esse	<i>to have followed</i>
Fut.	secūtūrum esse	<i>to be going to follow</i>

## Alphabetized Core Vocabulary List (Words 15 or More Times)

This is an alphabetized list of the running core vocabulary found at the beginning of this commentary. To use this book properly, readers should review and memorize the running core vocabulary as they read the stories. If they encounter a word in the text that is not found in the facing vocabulary, it is most likely in the running vocabulary and the list below.

The number of occurrences of each word i was tabulated with the help by the author.

- ā, ab, abs:** (away) from, out of, 72
- acciō:** to receive, get, accept, 26
- ad:** to, toward; near, 188
- animus, -ī m.:** soul, spirit, breath, courage, pride, 18
- annus, -ī m.:** year, 18
- Argonautae, -ārum m.:** Argonauts, 18
- at:** but; mind you; but, you say, 27
- atque:** and, and also, and even, 21
- audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītūm:** to hear, listen to, 22
- autem:** however, moreover, 81
- auxilium, -ī n.:** help, aid, assistance, 19
- bōs, bovis m. f.:** cow, ox, bull (bobus-dat. abl.), 18
- brevis, -e:** short, brief, 15
- capiō, capere, cēpī, captum:** to take, capture, seize, 14
- caput, capitīs, n.:** head; life, 20
- causa, -ae f.:** reason, cause; case, 31
- Circē, -ēs f.:** Circe, 15
- coepī, coepisse, coeptum:** begin, 16
- cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum:** to learn, *perf.* know, 22
- conferō, -ferre:** bring together, collect, carry, 18
- conficiō, -ere:** to exhaust, finish, accomplish, 16
- coniciō, -ere, -iēcī:** throw together, throw, take oneself, 13
- cōnsilium, -ī n.:** plan, advice; council, assembly, 23
- constituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus:** decide, establish, resolve, 36
- corpus, corporis, n.:** body, 19
- cum:** with (+ abl.); when, since, although, 196
- dē:** down from, from, about, concerning (+ abl.), 29
- deus, -ī m.:** god, divinity, deity, 19
- dicō, -ere, dixī, dictus:** say, speak, tell, call, name, 17
- diēs, -ēī m./f.:** day, time, season, 46
- dīmittō, -ere, -mīstī, -missus:** send away, let go, 8
- dō, dare, dedī, datum:** give, put, make; grant, allow, 42
- dolor, -ōris m.:** pain, grief, anger, passion, 17
- dum:** while, as long as, until, 35
- ē, ex:** out from, from, out of (+ abl.), 108
- ēgredior, -ī, -gressus:** go out, disembark, 18

- enim:** for, indeed, in truth, 77  
**et:** and, also, even, 287  
**etiam:** besides, also, even, 17  
**Eurystheus, -ī m.:** Eurystheus, 23  
**exspectō (1):** look out for, wait for, await, 15
- faciō, -ere, fēcī, fectum:** make, do, 89  
**flia, -iae f.:** daughter, 20  
**flūmen, -inis n.:** river, stream, 15  
**gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus:** carry (on), wage, 18  
**gravis, -e:** heavy, serious, severe; venerable, 16
- habeō, -ere, habuī, -itus:** have, hold; consider, 34  
**habitō (1):** to inhabit, live, 18  
**Hercules, -is m.:** Hercules 121  
**hic, haec, hoc:** this, that; he, she, it, 222  
**homō, -inis m./f.:** man, mortal, human, 21
- iam:** now, already, soon, 29  
**Iāson, -onis m.:** Jason, 45  
**ibi:** there, in that place, 21  
**īdem, eadem, idem:** the same, 15  
**igitur:** therefore, then, accordingly, 71  
**ille, illa, illud:** that (famous); he, she, it, 84  
**in:** in (+ abl.) , into (+ acc.), 272  
**ingēns (ingentis):** huge, immense, vast, huge, 21  
**insula, -ae f.:** island, 20  
**intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum:** to realize, understand, 24  
**interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum:** kill, slay, destroy, 15  
**ipse, ipsa, ipsum:** -self; the very, 50  
**is, ea, id:** this, that; he, she, it, 230  
**ita:** so, thus, 25  
**iter, itineris n.:** way, road, journey, 19  
**iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum:** to order, command, 17
- labor, -ōris m.:** labor, hardship, task, 22  
**lītus, lītoris n.:** shore, beach, 19  
**locus, -ī m.:** place, region, situation; opportunity, 51
- māgnopere:** greatly, very much, 15  
**magnus, -a, -um:** great, large, tall; mighty, important, 79  
**manus, -ūs f.:** hand, 16  
**mare, maris n.:** sea, 15  
**Mēdēa, -ae f.:** Medea, 27  
**mittō, -ere, -mīsī, missum:** to send, let go, 18  
**modus, -ī m.:** way, manner; **modo** (adv.) only 38  
**monstrum, -ī n.:** monster, 26  
**mox:** soon, 19  
**multus, -a, -um:** much, many, abundant, 36

- nāvis, nāvis, f.**: ship, boat, 63  
**nē**: lest, that not, no, not, 22  
**neque**: and not (neque...neque = neither...nor), 27  
**nōn**: not, by no means, not at all, 40  
**nūllus, -a, -um**: none, no, no one, 24  
**omnis, omne**: every, all, 96  
**parō (1)**: prepare, make (ready), 21  
**pars, partis, f.**: part, share, 23  
**paucī, -ae, -a**: little, few, scanty, 22  
**paulus, -a, -um**: little, small, 16  
**per**: through, over, across, 23  
**perīculum, -ī n.**: risk, danger, peril, 31  
**Perseus, -ī m.**: Perseus, 26  
**pervenīō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum**: to come through, arrive 19  
**Polyphēmus, -ī m.**: Polyphemus, 19  
**possum, posse, potuī**: be able, can, avail, 46  
**post**: after, behind (+ acc.); afterward, next, 32  
**postquam**: after, when, 58  
**prīmus -a -um**: first, 16  
**proficīscor, -ī, -fectus**: set out, depart, 19  
**progreḍior, -gredī, progressus sum**: advance, 17  
**puer, puerī, m.**: boy, 17  
**quaerō, -ere, quaeſīvī, quaeſītum**: to seek, ask, inquire, 21  
**quī, quae, quod (quis? quid?)**: who, which, that, 307  
**quīdam, quaedam, quiddam**: certain, a certain, 50  
**redeō, -ire, -ivī**: go back, return, come back, 19  
**referō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum**: report, bring back, 18  
**regiō, -ōnis f.**: region, district, 18  
**regnum, -ī n.**: (royal) power, kingdom, realm, 19  
**reliquo, -a, um**: remaining, left (over), 15  
**rēs, reī, f.**: thing, matter, affair, business, 83  
**rēx, rēgis m.**: king; *adj.* ruling, royal, 44  
**salūs, -ūtis f.**: safety, security, health, 15  
**saxum, saxī n.**: rock, 15  
**sē**: himself, herself, itself, themselves, 115  
**sed**: but, moreover, however, 31  
**sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsum**: to feel, perceive, 16  
**sī**: if (only), whether, in case that, 20  
**sine**: without (*abl.*), 19  
**socius, -ī m.**: ally, companion, comrade, 33  
**solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtum**: to loosen, release, 20  
**species, -ēi f.**: sight, look, appearance, aspect, 15  
**spelunca, -ae f.**: cave, 30  
**statim**: immediately, on the spot, at once, 28  
**subitō**: immediately, straightaway, 19

- sum, esse, fuī, futūrum:** to be, 422  
**summus, -a, -um:** highest, greatest, top of, 29  
**suus, -a, -um:** his, her, its, their (own), 84
- tamen:** nevertheless, however, 99  
**tandem:** finally, at last, at length, in the end, 28  
**tantus, -a, -um:** so great, so much, so large, 55  
**tempestās, -tātis f.:** weather; storm, 17  
**tempus, -poris n.:** time, 31  
**terra, -ae f.:** land, earth, 22  
**timor, -oris m.:** fear, dread, anxiety, 15  
**trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditum:** to give over, hand down, 20  
**tum:** then, at that time, 73
- ubi:** where, when, 56  
**Ulixēs, -is m.:** Ulysses, 43  
**ūnus, -a, -um:** one, 14  
**urbs, urbīs, f.:** city, 19  
**ut:** as, just as, when (+ ind.); (so) that, in order that, 112
- veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus:** come, go, 72  
**videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum:** to see, 50  
**vinum, vinī n.:** wine, 16  
**vir, virī m.:** man, male, 23  
**vīs, (vīs), f.:** force, power, violence; *pl.* **vīrēs**, strength, 23  
**volō, velle, voluī:** will, wish, be willing, 22